

GALEN  
THREE  
TREATISES:

ON MY OWN BOOKS

ON THE ORDER OF  
MY OWN BOOKS

THAT THE BEST PHYSICIAN  
IS ALSO A PHILOSOPHER

AN INTERMEDIATE  
GREEK READER

EVAN HAYES  
AND  
STEPHEN NIMIS



GALEN  
THREE TREATISES:

*On My Own Books,  
On the Order of My Own Books, &  
That the Best Physician is also a Philosopher*

An Intermediate Greek Reader

Greek text with running vocabulary and commentary

Evan Hayes  
and  
Stephen Nimis

Galen, Three Treatises: An Intermediate Greek Reader: Greek text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2014 by Evan Hayes and Stephen Nimis

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher. The authors have made a version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [www.creativecommons.org](http://www.creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter and distribute this work under the following conditions:

1. You must attribute the work to the author (but not in a way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
2. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
3. If you alter, transform or build up this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-10: 194099702X

ISBN-13: 9781940997025

Published by Faenum Publishing, Ltd.

Cover Design: Evan Hayes

Fonts: Garamond  
GFS Porson

[editor@faenumpublishing.com](mailto:editor@faenumpublishing.com)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements.....	v
Introduction.....	ix
Abbreviations .....	xiii
Text and Commentary	
<i>On My Own Books</i> .....	1-79
<i>On the Order of My Own Books</i> .....	81-109
<i>That the Best Physician is also a Philosopher</i> .....	111-133
Grammatical Topics	
Common Vocabulary.....	5
The Different Meanings of <i>αὐτός</i> .....	26
Defective Verbs.....	27
Participles: General Principles.....	39
Indirect Statement .....	84
General Conditions and General Clauses.....	86
Future Conditions .....	88
Circumstantial Participles .....	106
Result Clauses.....	115
Genitive Absolutes .....	121
Special Topics	
Map: The Libraries of Ancient Rome.....	2
The Antonine Emperors.....	24
The Fire of 192 AD.....	28
List of Verbs .....	135-145
Proper Names.....	147-151
Glossary .....	153-165



## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The idea for this project grew out of work that we, the authors, did with support from Miami University's Undergraduate Summer Scholars Program, for which we thank Martha Weber and the Office of Advanced Research and Scholarship. The Miami University College of Arts and Science's Dean's Scholar Program allowed us to continue work on the project and for this we are grateful to the Office of the Dean, particularly to Phyllis Callahan and Nancy Arthur for their continued interest and words of encouragement.

Work on the series, of which this volume is a part, was generously funded by the Joanna Jackson Goldman Memorial Prize through the Honors Program at Miami University. We owe a great deal to Carolyn Haynes, and the 2010 Honors & Scholars Program Advisory Committee for their interest and confidence in the project.

The technical aspects of the project were made possible through the invaluable advice and support of Bill Hayes, Christopher Kuo, and Daniel Meyers. The equipment and staff of Miami University's Interactive Language Resource Center were a great help along the way. We are also indebted to the Perseus Project, especially Gregory Crane and Bridget Almas, for their technical help and resources.

We owe a great deal of thanks to Cynthia Klestinec, who first sparked our interest in the history of medicine. We also thank Susan Stephens and Julia Nelson-Hawkins for introducing us to the larger field of medical humanities.

We also profited greatly from advice and help on the POD process from Geoffrey Steadman. All responsibility for errors, however, rests with the authors themselves.



Mary Beth Butcher, M.D.  
*optimae medicae*





## INTRODUCTION

The aim of this book is to make three of Galen's shorter works (*On My Own Books*, *On the Order of My Own Books*, *That the Best Physician is also a Philosopher*) accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and grammatical commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. Although Galen can be a little difficult at times, he gets easier and more predictable in time, and these three works are a great introduction to this fascinating figure. They are not strictly speaking medical works, but reflections on his own work and thought that throw extraordinary light on the relationship of the medical profession in antiquity to wider currents of thought in the brilliant period of Greek literature known as the "second sophistic."

Galen's work is not well-known today, a stark contrast to his enormous importance in the medical world and wide circulation all the way up to the beginning of the modern period. Galen's thought and its permutations over the centuries after his death constituted a largely unquestioned canon of medical practice in the Greek-speaking eastern Mediterranean; many of his works were later translated into Arabic and became a powerful stimulus to medical practice in the Islamic world; Arabic versions of Galen's own work, along with medical texts inspired by him, such as Ibn Sina's *Canon of Medicine*, were systematically translated into Latin beginning in the 11th century and became the basis for medical study in western Europe, where Galen's ideas quickly took on enormous authority. Although eventually sidelined by the modern study of medicine based on wholly new principles, Galen's importance for the history of medicine is singular.

Notorious as one of the great cranks of Greek literature, Galen participated vigorously in the scientific and philosophical discussions of his time, engaged with many of the most prominent contemporary intellectual figures in writing and in public debates, while mingling with the rich and the powerful, who valued his keen skills. He writes Greek in the literary dialect of Plato and other Attic writers of the classical period, as is the case with most prominent writers of the imperial period, and he himself contributed to debates about proper usage and good education. He consistently emphasized the importance of knowing the full range of Greek: not just Attic, but also the Ionic dialect of the Hippocratic corpus. However, he repudiated the "purist" tendencies of some

contemporaries who insisted on using only words attested in canonical authors, privileging accuracy and clarity over such concerns.

In *On My Own Books*, Galen explains how many of his works circulated beyond his control, or circulated among those for whom it was not meant, and how he attempted to produce official versions of his many works. He distinguishes works meant as introductions to subjects for beginners, from more scientific and philosophical treatises meant to be definitive statements on a medical topic, from other miscellaneous works that represent his interventions in the literary and intellectual culture of his times. He also gives an account of competitive displays of medical and rhetorical skills in which he participated, boasts of his successes, and laments works lost for good in the great fire in Rome in the year 192 CE. This is the most-cited work of Galen and is a great introduction to his intellectual world.

In *On the Order of My Own Books*, Galen suggests a course of study through his works for aspiring doctors, beginning with introductory works and philosophical texts, progressing through works on more specific medical subjects. Together with *On My Own Books*, this text gives an overview of his prodigious output and the rationale for their production. It is rare that an author, ancient or modern, provides so much context for understanding his work.

Lastly, in *That the Best Physician is also a Philosopher* Galen emphasizes the strong connection between good philosophical training and being an effective doctor, between restoring people to good health and knowing what the greatest good is, between being a good scientist and being a good human being. Highly rhetorical and philosophical itself, it is significant statement about the unity of learning.

The Greek text is based on the edition of I. Mueller which is in the public domain: *Claudii Galeni scripta minora* Volume II (1891), pp. 1-8, 80-124. Some minor changes have been made based on more recent editions for the sake of readability. This is not a scholarly edition; for that the reader is referred to the new Budé edition by Veronique Boudon-Millot (2007), which is superior in every way to all earlier editions. Of particular interest is the new information provided by her use of new witnesses to the texts of *On My Own Books* and *On the Order of My Own Books*. First there was an Arabic translation discovered in Iran, which filled in a number of gaps; then a new and more complete Greek manuscript was discovered in Thessaloniki. Thus, this new edition is by far more complete and correct than any prior version. Since the new Greek passages are not in the public domain, we have only summarized in English the content of the lacunae they fill.

## Select Bibliography

### Editions:

- Mueller, I., ed. *Claudii Galeni scripta minora*. Teubner: Leipzig, 1891.
- Wenkebach, E., ed. “Der hippokratische Arzt als das Ideal Galens,” *Quellen und Studien zur Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften und Medizin* 3.4 (1933), 170-75.
- Boudon-Millot, Véronique. *Galien: Introduction générale; Sur l'ordre de ses propres livres; Sur ses propres livres; Que l'excellent médecin est aussi philosophe*. Paris: Les Belles Lettres, 2007.

### English Translation:

- Singer, P. N., tr. *Galen: Selected Works*. Oxford University Press: Oxford, 1997.

### Critical Discussions:

- Hankinson, R. J. ed. *Cambridge Companion to Galen*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2008.
- Mattern, Susan. *The Prince of Medicine: Galen in the Roman Empire*. Oxford University Press: Oxford, 2013.
- Nutton, Vivian. *Ancient Medicine*. 2nd edn. Routledge: New York, 2013.
- Tucci, Pier Luigi. “Galen’s Storeroom, Rome’s Libraries, and the Fire of a.d. 192.” *JRA* 21 (2008): 133–49.
- White, Peter. “Bookshops in the Literary Culture of Rome,” In Johnson, William A., and Holt Parker, eds., *Ancient Literacies: The Culture of Reading in Greece and Rome* (Oxford University Press: Oxford, 2009), 268–87.

## How to use this book

The page by page vocabularies gloss all but the most common words. We have endeavored to make these glossaries as useful as possible without becoming fulsome. Certain medical and literary terms (p. 5) are unusually common in these texts of Galen, and are not glossed each time they occur. Readers should strive to commit this list to memory, but we have also included the terms on a removable bookmark on the last page for quick reference. A glossary of frequently occurring vocabulary can be found as an appendix in the back, but it is our hope that most readers will not need to use this appendix often. There is

## Galen

also a list of verbs used by Galen that have unusual forms in an appendix; the principal parts of those verbs are given there rather than in the glossaries.

The commentary is almost exclusively grammatical, explaining subordinate clauses, unusual verb forms, and idioms. Brief summaries of a number of grammatical and morphological topics, listed in the table of contents, are interspersed through the text as well. A good reading strategy is to read a passage in Greek, check the glossary for unusual words and consult the commentary as a last resort.

### An Important Disclaimer:

This volume is a self-published “Print on Demand” (POD) book, and it has not been vetted or edited in the usual way by publishing professionals. There are sure to be some factual and typographical errors in the text, for which we apologize in advance. The volume is also available only through online distributors, since each book is printed when ordered online. However, this publishing channel and format also account for the low price of the book; and it is a simple matter to make changes when they come to our attention. For this reason, any corrections or suggestions for improvement are welcome and will be addressed as quickly as possible in future versions of the text.

Please e-mail corrections or suggestions to [editor@faenumpublishing.com](mailto:editor@faenumpublishing.com).

### About the Authors:

Evan Hayes is a recent graduate in Classics and Philosophy at Miami University and the 2011 Joanna Jackson Goldman Scholar.

Stephen Nimis is a Professor of Classics at Miami University.

## ABBREVIATIONS

abs.	absolute	mid.	middle
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	obj.	object, objective
adv.	adverb, adverbial	opt.	optative
ao.	aorist	part.	participle, partitive
art.	article, articular	pas.	passive
attrib.	attributive	perf.	perfect
circum.	circumstantial	pl.	plural
cl.	clause	plupf.	pluperfect
comp.	comparison, comparative	pot.	potential
compl.	complementary	pr.	present
cond.	condition, conditional	pred.	predicate
dat.	dative	pron.	pronoun
dir.	direct	purp.	purpose
epex.	epexegetic	quest.	question
f.	feminine	rel.	relative
fut.	future	res.	result
gen.	genitive	resp.	respect
imper.	imperative	s.	singular
impers.	impersonal	sec.	secondary
impf.	imperfect	seq.	sequence
ind.	indicative	st.	statement
inf.	infinitive	subj.	subject, subjective
instr.	instrumental	temp.	temporal
m.	masculine		



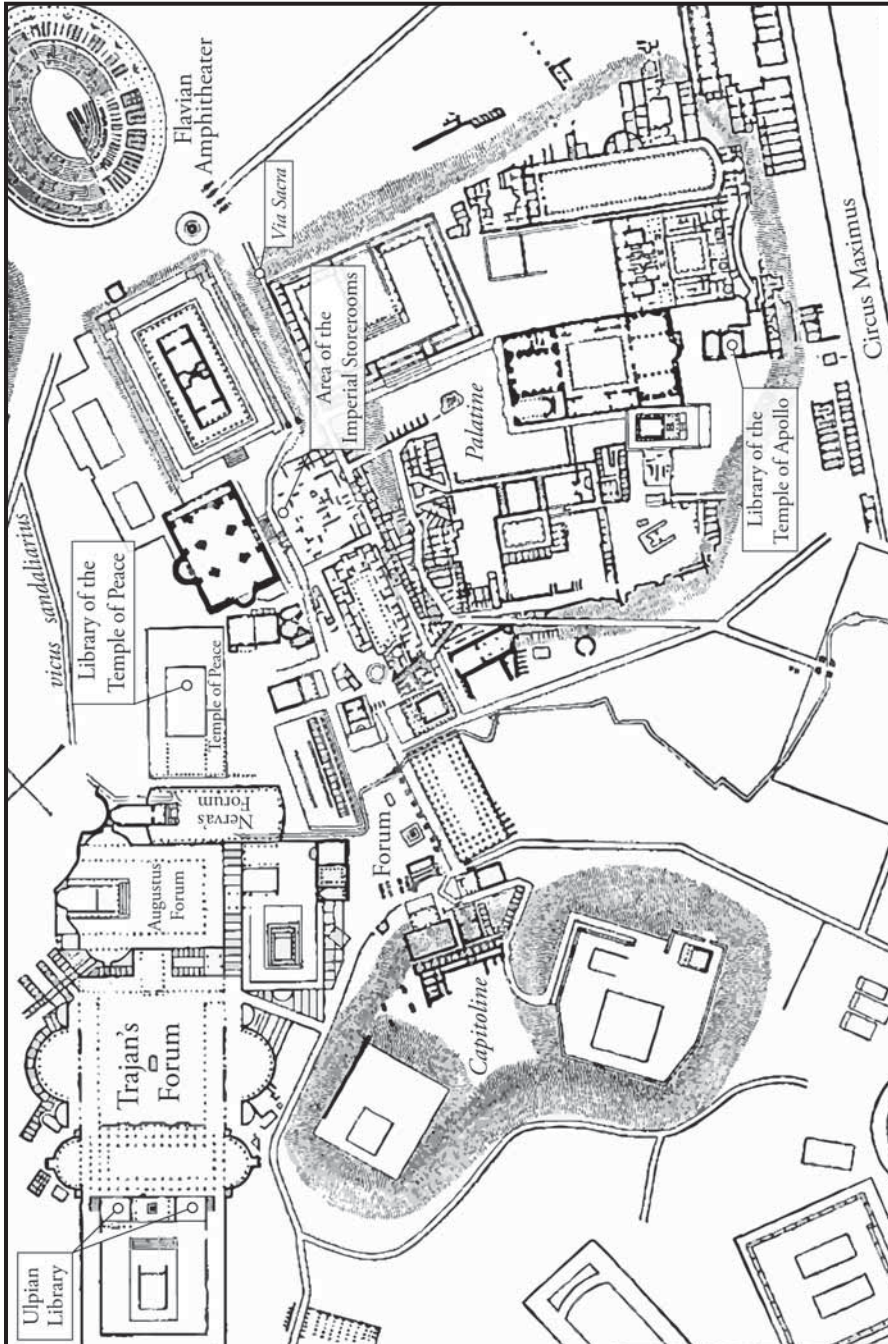
ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ  
ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΙΔΙΩΝ ΒΙΒΛΙΩΝ

Galen's  
*On My Own Books*



## THE LIBRARIES OF ANCIENT ROME

This map of central Rome indicates the location of public libraries. Also note the location of the *vicus sandaliarius* (Gk. **Σανδαλάριον**, a center of Roman book trade mentioned by Galen) and the imperial storerooms, where some of Galen's works may have been stored before their destruction in the fire of 192 CE.



## ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΙΔΙΩΝ ΒΙΒΛΙΩΝ

*Galen recounts an incident at the bookseller where the authenticity of a book is questioned.*

Ἔργω φανερά γέγονεν ἡ συμβουλή σου, κράτιστε Βάσσε, περὶ τῆς γραφῆς τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγονότων βιβλίων. ἐν γάρ τοι τῷ Σανδαλαρίῳ, καθ' ὃ δὴ πλείστα τῶν ἐν Ῥώμῃ βιβλιοπωλείων ἐστίν, ἐθεασάμεθά τινας ἀμφισβητοῦντας, εἴτ' ἐμὸν εἶη τὸ πιπρασκόμενον αὐτὸ βιβλίον εἴτ' ἄλλου τινός: ἐπεγέγραπτο γὰρ ΓΑΛΗΝΟΣ ἸΑΤΡΟΣ. ὠνουμένου δέ τινος ὡς ἐμὸν ὑπὸ τοῦ ξένου τῆς ἐπιγραφῆς κινήθεις τις ἀνὴρ

**ἀμφισβητέω:** to stand apart, argue

**Βάσσος, -ου, ὁ:** Bassus

**βιβλιοπωλείον, τό:** a bookseller's shop

**βιβλίον, τό:** a scroll, book

**γέννομαι:** to engender

**γραφῆ, ἡ:** writing

**εἶτε... εἶτε:** whether... or

**ἐμός, -ή, -όν:** mine

**ἐπιγραφῆ, ἡ:** an inscription, title

**ἐπιγράφω:** to engrave, entitle

**θεάομαι:** to look on, view, observe

**ιατρός, ὁ:** a doctor, physician

**κινέω:** to set in motion, move

**κράτιστος, -η, -ον:** most excellent, best

**ξένος, -η, -ον:** foreign, strange

**πιπράσκω:** to sell

**πλείστος, -η, -ον:** most, largest

**Ῥώμη, ἡ:** Rome

**Σανδαλάριον, -ου, τό:** the Sandal-maker district, site of book trade

**συμβουλή, ἡ:** counsel, consultation

**τοι:** let me tell you, surely

**φανερός, -ά, -όν:** manifest, evident

**ᾠνόμομαι:** to buy, purchase

**ἔργω:** dat. of means, "by action" i.e. by what happened

**γέγονεν:** perf., "has become"

**Βάσσε:** the addressee of the work is unknown

**γεγονότων:** perf. part., "of the works *engendered* by me"

**Σανδαλάριον:** the Sandal-maker district (*vicus sandaliarius*) was the site of book trade, mentioned by Galen and others.

**καθ' ὃ δὴ:** "in which place indeed" i.e., the very place where

**ἐθεασάμεθά:** ao., "we observed"

**ἀμφισβητοῦντας:** pr. part. acc. after **ἐθεασάμεθά**, "observed certain men *arguing*"

**εἴτ' ἐμὸν εἶη:** pr. opt. in ind. quest. after **ἀμφισβητοῦντας**, "arguing *whether it was mine* or someone else's"

**πιπρασκόμενον:** pr. part. nom. attrib., "the book *being sold*"

**ἐπεγέγραπτο:** plupf., "it had been inscribed," i.e. entitled

**ὠνουμένου:** perf. part. of **ὀνύημι** in gen. abs., "someone *having bought it*"

**ὡς ...κινήθεις:** ao. pas. part. with **ὡς** indicating an alleged purpose, "since he (a second man) was motivated"

**τις ἀνὴρ:** "some (other) man," the subj. modified by **κινήθεις**

τῶν φιλολόγων ἐβουλήθη γνῶναι τὴν ἐπαγγελίαν αὐτοῦ: καὶ δύο τοὺς πρώτους στίχους ἀναγνοὺς εὐθέως ἀπέρριψε τὸ γράμμα, τοῦτο μόνον ἐπιφθεγξάμενος, ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν ἡ λέξις αὕτη Γαλινοῦ καὶ ψευδῶς ἐπιγέγραπται τουτὶ τὸ βιβλίον. ὁ μὲν οὖν τοῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπεπαίδευτο τὴν πρώτην παιδείαν, ἣν οἱ παρ' Ἑλλησι παῖδες ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐπαιδεύοντο παρά τε γραμματικοῖς καὶ ῥήτορσιν: οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ τῶν νῦν ἰατρικὴν ἢ φιλοσοφίαν μετιόντων οὐδ' ἀναγνῶναι καλῶς δυνάμενοι φοιτῶσι παρὰ τοὺς διδάξοντας τά τε μέγιστα καὶ κάλλιστα τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποις, τὰ θεωρήματα, ἃ φιλοσοφία τε καὶ ἰατρικὴ διδάσκουσιν.

ἀναγιγνώσκω: to read

ἀπορρίπτω: to throw away, reject

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin, first cause

βούλομαι: to will, wish

γράμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

γραμματικός, -ός: a grammarian

δύναμαι: to be able to (+ *inf.*)

εἶπον: to speak, say

ἐπαγγελία, ἡ: subject matter

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

ἐπιφθέγγομαι: to speak in addition

Ἑλλησιν, ὅ: a Greek

εὐθέως: immediately

θεώρημα, -ατος, τό: a theorem

ἰατρικός, -ή, -όν: of medicine, medical

λέξις, -εως, ἡ: a speaking, style

μετέρχομαι: to go after, seek, pursue

παιδεία, ἡ: education

παιδεύω: to educate

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

ῥήτωρ, -ορος, ὁ: a public speaker

στίχος, ὁ: a row, line (of writing)

φιλόλογος, -ον: fond of literature

φοιτῶ: to go to and fro, frequent

ψευδῶς: falsely

ἐβουλήθη: ao. pas. with mid. meaning, "he wished"

γνῶναι: ao. inf. complementing ἐβουλήθη, "he wished to know"

ἀναγνοὺς: ao. part. nom., "having read"

ἀπέρριψε: ao. of ἀπο-ρίπτω, "he tore off"

ἐπιφθεγξάμενος: ao. part., "having uttered only this"

ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν: noun cl. of apposition to τοῦτο, "this, namely that this is not"

ἐπιγέγραπται: perf., "and that this has been inscribed"

ὁ ... εἰπὼν: ao. part., "the one having said this"

ἐπεπαίδευτο: plupf., "had been educated"

ἣν ... ἐπαιδεύοντο: impf. in rel. cl., "which they used to learn"

ἰατρικὴν (sc. τέχνην): "the art of medicine"

τῶν νῦν μετιόντων: pr. part. gen. pl. of μετα-ἔρχομαι, "of those now pursuing"

ἀναγνῶναι: ao. inf. compl. δυνάμενοι, "not being able to read"

τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποις: partitive gen., "the best things of those among men"

### Common Vocabulary

The following words are unusually common in these texts of Galen, and are not glossed each time they occur. Readers should familiarize themselves with the meanings of these essential terms as early as possible.

#### NOUNS

*αἵρεσις, -εως, ἡ*: a sect, a school of philosophy

*αἰτία, ἡ*: a cause, reason

*ἀνατομή, ἡ*: dissection, anatomy

*ἀπόδειξις, -εως, ἡ*: a demonstration, proof

*βιβλίον, τό*: a paper, scroll, book

*δόγμα, -ατος, τό*: an opinion, dogma

*δύναμις, -εως, ἡ*: power, faculty

*ἐπιγραφή, ἡ*: an inscription, title

*θεώρημα, -ατος, τό*: a speculation, theory

*θεωρία, ἡ*: a science, theory, investigation

*ιατρική, ἡ*: medicine, medical art

*ιατρός, ό*: a doctor, physician or surgeon

*μέθοδος, ἡ*: a following after, pursuit, method

*μέρος, -εος, τό*: a part, share

*μόριον, τό*: a piece, part, portion

*μῦς, μῦς, ό*: a muscle

*νόσημα, -ατος, τό*: a sickness, disease, plague

*ὀστέον, τό*: a bone

*πραγματεία, ἡ*: a major work, treatment, written study

*τέχνη, ἡ*: art, skill, craft

*ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό*: a commentary, note, treatise

#### ADJECTIVES

*ἀνατομικός, -ή, -όν*: anatomical, relating to anatomy

*θεραπευτικός, -ή, -όν*: therapeutic

*ιατρικός, -ή, -όν*: of medicine, medical

*λογικός, -ή, -όν*: logical, rational

#### VERBS

*ἀναγιγνώσκω*: to read

*γράφω*: to write

Also note the these **common numbers**. Larger and more complex numbers will appear in the running glossary, but the following will not.

- |                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>εἷς, μία, ἓν</i> : one  | <i>πρότερος, -α, -ον</i> : prior     |
|                               | <i>πρώτος, -η, -ον</i> : first       |
| 2. <i>δύο, δυοῖν</i> : two    | <i>δεύτερος, -α, -ον</i> : second    |
| 3. <i>τρεις, τρία</i> : three | <i>τρίτος, -η, -ον</i> : third       |
| 4. <i>τέτταρες, -α</i> : four | <i>τέταρτος, -η, -ον</i> : fourth    |
| 5. <i>πέντε</i> : five        | <i>πέμπτος, -η, -ον</i> : fifth      |
| 6. <i>ἕξ</i> : six            | <i>ἕκτος, -η, -ον</i> : sixth        |
| 7. <i>ἑπτα</i> : seven        | <i>ἕβδομος, -η, -ον</i> : seventh    |
| 8. <i>ὀκτώ</i> : eight        | <i>ὄγδοος, -η, -ον</i> : eighth      |
| 9. <i>ἐννέα</i> : nine        | <i>ἕνατος, -η, -ον</i> : ninth       |
| 10. <i>δέκα</i> : ten         | <i>δέκατος, -η, -ον</i> : tenth      |
| 11. <i>ἑνδεκα</i> : eleven    | <i>ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον</i> : eleventh |

*Galen explains how his books have been mutilated by unauthorized circulation*

ἤρκετο μὲν οὖν ἡ τοιαύτη ῥαδιουργία πρὸ πολλῶν ἐτῶν, ἡνίκ' ἔτι μειράκιον ἦν ἐγώ, οὐ μὴν εἰς τοσοῦτόν γ', εἰς ὅσον νῦν ἠϋξῆται, προεληλύθει τὸ κατ' ἐκείνον τὸν χρόνον. διὰ τ' οὖν αὐτὸ τοῦτο καὶ διότι πολυειδῶς ἐλωβήσαντο πολλοὶ τοῖς ἐμοῖς βιβλίοις, ἄλλοι κατ' ἄλλα τῶν ἐθνῶν ἀναγιγνώσκοντες ὡς ἴδια μετὰ τοῦ τὰ μὲν ἀφαιρεῖν, τὰ δὲ προστιθέναι, τὰ δ' ὑπαλλάττειν, ἄμεινον ἡγοῦμαι δηλῶσαι πρῶτον αὐτοῦ τοῦ λελωβῆσθαι τὴν αἰτίαν, εἶτα περὶ τῶν ὄντως ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένων ἥτις γε καθ' ἕκαστον αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἡ ἐπαγγελία. τοῦ μὲν δὴ πολλοὺς ἀνα-

αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, cause

αὐξάνω: to increase

ἀμείνων, -ον: better

ἄρχω: to begin

ἀφαιρέω: to take away from

γράφω: to write

δηλόω: to show, make clear

διότι: for the reason that

ἔθνος, -εος, τό: an ethnic group

ἐπαγγελία, ἡ: subject matter

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

ἡγέομαι: to consider, suppose

ἡνίκα: at which time, when

λωβάομαι: to maltreat, mutilate

μειράκιον, τό: a boy, lad

πολυειδής, -ές: of many kinds

προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance

προστίθημι: to add to

ῥαδιουργία, ἡ: ease in doing, laziness

τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: so large, so great

ὑπαλλάττω: to alter

ἤρκετο: plupf. mid. of ἄρχω, "had begun"

εἰς τοσοῦτόν γ': but certainly not *to this point*"

εἰς ὅσον: "to such an extent"

ἠϋξῆται: perf. of αὐξάνω, "it now *has increased*"

προεληλύθει: plupf. of προ-έρχομαι, "it had progressed"

ἐλωβήσαντο: ao. mid. of λωβάομαι, "many *maltreated*" + dat.

τῶν ἐθνῶν: gen. pl., "from the nations" i.e. foreigners or provincials

ἀναγιγνώσκοντες: pr. part., "circulating (by reading)"

μετὰ τοῦ ... ἀφαιρεῖν, προστιθέναι, ὑπαλλάττειν: articular inf. all in gen. case after μετὰ, "with subtractions, additions, alterations"

δηλῶσαι: ao. inf. epex. after ἄμεινον, "better *to clarify*"

τοῦ λελωβῆσθαι: perf. inf. art., "the cause *of the mutilation*"

ὄντως: adv. form of pr. part., "of those *really*"

ἥτις ... ἐστίν: ind. quest., "clarify *what the subject is*"

τοῦ μὲν ... ἀναγιγνώσκειν: art. inf. gen. after αἰτίαν, "the cause *of many circulating*," lit., "reading out loud"

γιγνώσκειν ὡς ἴδια τὰ ἐμὰ τὴν αἰτίαν αὐτὸς οἶσθα, κράτιστε Βάσσει: φίλοις γὰρ ἢ μαθηταῖς ἐδίδοτο χωρὶς ἐπιγραφῆς ὡς ἂν οὐδὲν πρὸς ἔκδοσιν ἀλλ' αὐτοῖς ἐκείνοις γεγονότα δεηθεῖσιν ὧν ἤκουσαν ἔχειν ὑπομνήματα. τινῶν μὲν οὖν ἀποθανόντων οἱ μετ' ἐκείνους ἔχοντες ἀρεσθέντες αὐτοῖς ἀνεγίνωσκον ὡς ἴδια, τινῶν δὲ καὶ ζώντων [...] παρὰ τῶν ἐχόντων κοινωνησάντων

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

ἀρέσκω: to please

δέομαι: to ask, request

ἔκδοσις, -εως, ἡ: an official edition, publication

κοινωνέω: to share in, to receive

κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, most excellent

μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil

ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό: a note, record

χωρὶς: apart from, without (+ gen.)

ὡς ἴδια: “as though their own”

ἐδίδοτο: impf. pas., “(the books) are given to” + dat.

ὡς ἂν ... γεγονότα: perf. part. with ὡς indicating an alleged cause, and ἂν indicating that it is contrary to fact, “as though they had been made”

οὐδὲν: acc. of resp., “in no way”

δεηθεῖσιν: ao. pas. part. dat. pl., “to those very ones *who had requested*”

ὧν: rel. pron. attracted into case of antecedent, “notes (of the things) *which* they had heard”

ἔχειν: inf. compl. δεηθεῖσιν, “requested *to have*”

τινῶν ... ἀποθανόντων: ao. part. in gen. abs., “some having died”

οἱ ... ἔχοντες: pr. part., “*those possessing* them after the first ones”

ἀρεσθέντες: ao. pas. of ἀρέσκω, “*having been pleased* with them”

ἀνεγίνωσκον: impf., “they began circulating”

τινῶν δὲ καὶ ζώντων: gen. abs., “while others, even while still alive”

[...] a lacuna here can be filled in by the Arabic version: “some sold the books, some made copies or modified them, while some”

κοινωνησάντων: ao. part. in a gen. abs. agreeing with something in the lacuna, “some *having received* them from those who possessed them”

**The following names are used by Galen for his publications:**

βιβλίον, τό: a scroll, a volume, a book

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

ὑπομνήματα, τά: notes, a commentary

εἰσαγωγή, ἡ: an introduction

Cf. ὑποτύπωσις, -εως, ἡ: an outline

ὑπογραφή, ἡ: a sketch

σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view, synopsis

ὑφήγησις, -εως, ἡ: a guide

αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ἑαυτῶν πατρίδα πορευθέντες ὑποδιατρίβαντες ἄλλος ἄλλως κατ' αὐτὰ τὰς ἐπιδείξεις ἐποιοῦντο. φωραθέντων δ' ἀπάντων τῷ χρόνῳ πολλοὶ τῶν αὐθις κτησαμένων ἐπεγράψαντ' ἐμοῦ τοῦνομα καὶ διαφωνοῦντα τοῖς παρ' ἄλλοις οὖσιν εὐρόντες ἐκόμισαν πρὸς με παρακαλέσαντες ἐπανορθώσασθαι.

γεγραμμένων οὖν, ὡς ἔφη, οὐ πρὸς ἔκδοσιν αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὴν τῶν δεηθέντων ἕξιν τε καὶ χρεῖαν εἰκὸς δήπου τὰ μὲν ἐκτετάσθαι, τὰ δὲ συνεστάλθαι καὶ τὴν ἐρμηνείαν αὐτὴν τε τῶν

---

ἄλλως: in another way

αὐθις: back, again

δέομαι: to ask

δήπου: perhaps, it may be

διαφωνέω: to be dissonant, disagree

εἰκός: likely

ἔκδοσις, -εως, ἡ: an official edition, publication

ἐκτείνω: to stretch out, extend

ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession

ἐπανορθώω: to set up again, restore

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

ἐπιδείξις, -εως, ἡ: a display, demonstration

ἐρμηνεία, ἡ: interpretation, explanation

εὐρίσκω: to find

κομίζω: to bring

κτάομαι: to get, gain, acquire

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

παρακαλέω: to call to, exhort

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: fatherland

πορεύω: to make one's way, go

συστέλλω: to draw together, compress

ὑποδιατρίβω: to delay a little

φωράω: to detect

χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

---

πορευθέντες: ao. pas. part. with active meaning, "having travelled"

ὑποδιατρίβαντες: ao. part. of ὑπο-δια-τρίβω, "having delayed a little"

ἄλλος ἄλλως: "each one, in some way"

κατ' αὐτὰ: "the demonstrations *in them*"

ἐποιοῦντο: impf., "they began making demonstrations"

φωραθέντων: ao. pas. part. in gen. abs., "all *having been detected*"

τῶν αὐθις κτησαμένων: ao. part., "many *of those who recovered*"

ἐπεγράψαντο: ao., "many *inscribed*"

διαφωνοῦντα: pr. part. n. pl., "things disagreeing with" + dat.

τοῖς παρ' ἄλλοις οὖσιν: dat. after διαφωνοῦντα, "disagreeing *with those being with others*" i.e. other copies

εὐρόντες: ao. part., "many *having discovered*"

ἐπανορθώσασθαι: ao. mid. inf. complementing παρακαλέσαντες, "having ordered (me) *to correct them*"

γεγραμμένων: perf. part. in gen. abs., "these *having been written*"

οὐ πρὸς ἔκδοσιν: "not for (official) publication"

τῶν δεηθέντων: ao. pas. part., "the use *of those having asked*"

ἐκτετάσθαι, συνεστάλθαι: perf. inf. after εἰκός, "(it is) likely that some *have been extended, others compressed*"

θεωρημάτων τὴν διδασκαλίαν ἢ τελείαν ὑπάρχειν ἢ ἔλλιπῆ. τὰ γοῦν τοῖς εἰρημένοις γεγραμμένα πρόδηλον δήπου μήτε τὸ τέλειον τῆς διδασκαλίας ἔχειν μήτε τὸ διηκριβωμένον, ὡς ἂν οὔτε δεομένων αὐτῶν οὔτε δυναμένων ἀκριβῶς μαθάνειν πάντα, πρὶν ἔξιν τινὰ σχεῖν ἐν τοῖς ἀναγκαίοις. ὑποτυπώσεις γοῦν ἐπέγραψαν ἔνιοι τῶν πρὸ ἐμοῦ τὰ τοιαῦτα βιβλία, καθάπερ τινὲς ὑπογραφάς, ἕτεροι δ' εἰσαγωγὰς ἢ συνόψεις ἢ ὑφήγησεις: ἐγὼ δ' ἀπλῶς δούς τοῖς μαθηταῖς οὐδὲν ἐπέγραψα

---

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate

ἀναγκαῖον, τό: a necessity

ἀπλῶς: singly, in one way

γοῦν: at any rate, any way

δέομαι: to lack, need

διακριβῶ: to examine with precision

διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction, education

εἰσαγωγή, ἡ: an introduction

ἔλλιπής, -ές: wanting, lacking, defective

ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine

ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ἔξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession, training

ἐπιγράφα: to engrave, entitle

μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil

πρὶν: before (+ *inf.*)

πρόδηλος, -ον: clear beforehand

σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view, synopsis

τέλειος, -α, -ον: finished, complete

ὑπάρχω: to begin, to be from the beginning

ὑπογραφή, ἡ: a sketch

ὑποτύπωσις, -εως, ἡ: an outline, pattern

ὑφήγησις, -εως, ἡ: a guide

---

ὑπάρχειν: another *inf.* after εἰκός, “and that the expression and doctrine is”

τὰ ... γεγραμμένα: *perf. part. acc. subj of ἔχειν*, “that those things written *would have*”

τοῖς εἰρημένοις: *perf. part. dat. of adv.*, “for those mentioned (i.e. above)”

πρόδηλον δήπου: “(it is) certainly clear that” + *acc.* + *inf.*

τὸ διηκριβωμένον: *perf. part. of δια-κριβῶ*, used substantively as the object of ἔχειν, “the quality of having being minutely inspected”

ὡς ἂν ... δεομένων: *pr. part. causal*, “since they (i.e. the beginners) would not have needed” + *inf.*

(ὡς ἂν) οὔτε δυναμένων: *pr. part.*, “nor been able to” + *inf.*

σχεῖν: *ao. inf.*, “before *having had* some training”

ὑποτυπώσεις: *acc. pl. pred.*, “titled such books *outlines*”

ἐπέγραψαν: *ao.*, “inscribed (with a title)”

τῶν πρὸ ἐμοῦ: “of those prior to me”

ὑπογραφάς: “just as some titled them *sketches*”

δούς: *ao. part.*, “I, *having given to*” + *dat.*



καὶ διὰ τοῦθ' ὕστερον εἰς πολλοὺς ἀφικομένων ἄλλος ἄλλην ἐπιγραφὴν ἐποίησατο. τὰ δ' οὖν εἰς ἐμὲ κομισθέντα πρὸς τινῶν ἐπανορθώσεως ἔνεκεν ἠξίωσα τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις ἐπιγεγράφθαι: περὶ πρώτων οὖν τούτων ποιήσομαι τὸν λόγον.

ἀξιόω: to deem worthy of (+ *inf.*)

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to

εἰσάγω: to introduce

ἔνεκα: on account of (+ *gen.*)

ἐπανόρθωσις, -εως, ἡ: a correcting, revision

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

κομίζω: to bring

λόγος, ὁ: an account

ὕστερον: (*adv.*) later, after

ἀφικομένων (sc. βιβλίων): ao. part. in gen. abs., "the book having arrived"

ἄλλος ἄλλην: "one made one title, another a different one"

τὰ ... κομισθέντα: ao. pas. part., "the ones brought to me"

ἐπανορθώσεως ἔνεκεν: "for the sake of correction"

τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις: pr. part. dat., "to those beginning"

ἐπιγεγράφθαι: perf. inf. complementing ἠξίωσα, "I deemed it worthy to have inscribed them"

τούτων: "about these" i.e. the beginner books

#### A Note on Titles of Books

Galen titled most of his books in the format *περὶ* plus the genitive (e.g. *περὶ τῶν σφυγμῶν*: "On Pulses"), often with some information about the number of volumes (e.g. *τὸ βιβλίον*, "the book," *τρία βιβλία*, "three books") or the type of treatise (*τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις*: "for beginners"). Additional specification about the content will normally be included as an attributive phrase between *περὶ* and the main topic: *περὶ τῶν παρὰ φύσιν ὄγκων*, "On the Unnatural Tumors." Sometimes this attribute will also be in the genitive case: *περὶ τῶν τῆς ἀναπνοῆς αἰτίων*, "On the Causes of Breathing," and often there will an enclosing phrase referring to the volume: *τὸ περὶ τῶν τῆς ἀναπνοῆς αἰτίων βιβλίον*, "the volume On the Causes of Breathing." A few works have a title in the nominative case: *τέχνη ἰατρική*, "The Healing Art."

In our text the titles of books have been identified with small capitals:

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑ ΦΥΣΙΝ ὙΓΚΩΝ

I. Περὶ τῶν γεγονότων ὑπομνημάτων ἐν Ῥώμῃ κατὰ τὴν  
πρώτην ἐπίδημίαν.

*Works written for beginners*

Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐδ' εἶχον ἀπάντων αὐτῶν ἀντίγραφα  
μειρακίοις ὑπαγορευθέντων ἀρχομένοις μαιθάνειν ἢ καί τισι  
φίλοις ἀξιώσασσι δοθέντων: ὕστερον δ' ὅποτε τὸ δεύτερον ἦκον  
εἰς Ῥώμην, κομισθέντων, ὡς εἴρηται, πρὸς με διορθώσεως ἔνε-  
κεν, ἐκτησάμην τε καὶ τὴν ἐπιγραφὴν ἔδωκα ΠΕΡΙ ΑἰΡΕΣΕΩΝ  
ΤΟΙΣ ΕἰΣΑΓΟΜΕΝΟΙΣ, ὃ πρῶτον ἂν εἴη πάντων ἀναγνωστέον τοῖς  
μαθησομένοις τὴν ἰατρικὴν τέχνην: ἐν αὐτῷ γὰρ αἱ κατὰ γένος

---

ἀντίγραφον, τό: copy, transcript  
ἀξίω: to deem worthy of  
ἄρχω: to begin  
γένος, -ους, τό: a family, genre  
διόρθωσις, -εως, ἦ: a revision  
εἰσάγω: to introduce  
ἔνεκα: on account of (+ *gen.*)  
ἐπίδημία, ἦ: a visit, residing  
ἦκω: to have come, be present

κομίζω: to bring along  
κτάομαι: to procure for oneself  
μειράκιον, τό: a boy  
ὅποτε: when  
Ῥώμη, ἦ: Rome  
τέχνη, ἦ: an art, skill  
ὑπαγορεύω: to dictate  
ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό: a treatise  
ὕστερον: later, after

---

τῶν γεγονότων: perf. part., “the treatises *that were written*”

ἐν Ῥώμῃ: Galen's first stay in Rome was 162-166CE.

οὐδ' εἶχον: impf., “I did not used to have”

ὑπαγορευθέντων: ao. pas. part., “copies of all those *dictated to*” + dat.

ἀρχομένοις: pr. part. dat., “for young men *beginning to*” + inf.

ἀξιώσασσι: ao. part. dat. agreeing with φίλοις, “given to friends *deemed worthy*”

δοθέντων: ao. pas. part., “or of those works *given to*”

τὸ δεύτερον: acc. adv., “a second time”

κομισθέντων (sc. βιβλίων): gen. abs., “the books *having been brought to me*”

ὡς εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, “as has been said”

ἐκτησάμην: ao., “I *procured* them”

ΠΕΡΙ ... ΕἰΣΑΓΟΜΕΝΟΙΣ: “*About the Sects for Beginners*,” referring to the different schools of medicine.

ἂν εἴη: pr. opt. pot., “which *would be*”

ἀναγνωστέον: verb. adj. pred., “be what *ought to be read*”

τοῖς μαθησομένοις: fut. mid. part. dat. expressing agency with ἀναγνωστέον, “by those about to learn”

κατὰ γένος: “according to genre”

ἀλλήλων αἰρέσεις διαφέρουσαι διδάσκονται: κατὰ γένος δ' εἶπον, ἐπειδὴ καὶ διαφοραὶ τινες ἐν αὐταῖς εἰσι, καθ' ὅς ὕστερον οἱ εἰσαχθέντες ἐπεκδιδάσκονται. τὰ δὲ τῶν τριῶν αἰρέσεων ὀνόματα σχεδὸν ἅπαντες ἤδη γινώσκουσιν τὴν μὲν τινα δογματικὴν τε καὶ λογικὴν ὀνομάζεσθαι, τὴν δὲ δευτέραν ἐμπειρικὴν, τὴν τρίτην δὲ μεθοδικήν: ὅσα τοίνυν ἐστὶν ἐκάστης ἴδια ἢ καθ' ἃ διαφέρουσιν ἀλλήλων, ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ βιβλίῳ γέγραπται. τοῖς δ' εἰσαγομένοις ὑπηγορεύθη τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ὈΣΤΩΝ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΣΦΥΓΜΩΝ, ἐδόθη δὲ καὶ φίλῳ Πλατωνικῶ κατὰ τὴν ἐπιδημίαν ταύτην εἰσαγωγικὰ δύο βιβλία, τὸ μὲν φλεβῶν καὶ ἀρτηριῶν,

---

ἀλλήλων: one another

ἀρτηρία, ἢ: artery

διαφέρω: to carry over or across

διαφορά, ἢ: difference, distinction

δογματικός, -ή, -όν: dogmatic

εἶπον: to speak, say

εἰσαγωγικός, -ή, -όν: introductory

εἰσάγω: to introduce

ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: empirical

ἐπεκδιδάσκω: to teach in addition

ἐπιδημία, ἢ: a stay in a place

λογικός, -ή, -όν: rational

μεθοδικός, -ή, -όν: methodical, systematic

ὄνομα, τό: name

ὀνομάζω: to name, call

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

Πλατωνικός, -ή, -ον: Platonic

σφυγμός, ὁ: a pulse

σχεδόν: nearly

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

ὑπαγορεύω: to dictate

ὕστερον: later

φλέψ, ἢ: a vein

---

διαφέρουσαι: pr. part., “*differing* from one another”

καὶ διαφοραὶ: “there are *additional differences*”

καθ' ὅς: “according to which (differences)”

οἱ εἰσαχθέντες: ao. pas. part., “those who have been introduced”

σχεδὸν ἅπαντες: “*nearly everyone* knows”

τὴν μὲν τινα ... τὴν δὲ δευτέραν: acc. subj. of ὀνομάζεσθαι, “*that the first* is called Dogmatic, *the second* Empiric, etc.”

ὅσα: “*whatever* are the peculiarities”

ἢ καθ' ἃ: “or in what ways”

ὑπηγορεύθη: ao. pas., “were dictated”

τὸ (sc. βιβλίον) περὶ: “*the (book) about* bones”

ἐδόθη: ao. pas., “two books *were given to*” + dat.

τὸ μὲν ... τὸ δὲ: ἔχον is understood with each, “the one having the anatomy ... the other having the anatomy”

τὸ δὲ νεύρων ἔχον ἀνατομήν, καὶ ἐτέρῳ τινὶ τῆς Ἐμπειρικῆς Ἀγωγῆς Ὑποτύπωσις: ὧν οὐδὲν ἔχων ἐγὼ παρὰ τῶν ἐχόντων ἔλαβον, ἠνίκα τὸ δεύτερον ἦκον εἰς Ῥώμην.

*Works that were written at the request of certain individuals but later circulated more widely*

ἄλλων δέ τινων τότε γραφέντων φίλοις ἔμεινεν ἀντίγραφα παρ' ἐμοὶ διὰ τὸ τελέως ἐξεργάσθαι: ὧν ἔστι καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΤΗΣ Ἀναπνοῆς Αἰτιῶν δύο καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΩΝΗΣ τέτταρα, προσφωνηθέντα τινὶ τῶν ὑπατικῶν ἀνδρῶν, Βοηθῶ τοῦνομα, κατὰ τὴν Ἀριστοτέλους αἵρεσιν φιλοσοφούντι. τούτῳ καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ Ἱπποκράτους Ἀνατομῆς καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ

---

ἀγωγή, ἡ: a school (of thought)

αἷτια, ἡ: a cause

ἀναπνοή, ἡ: breathing

ἀνατομή, ἡ: dissection

ἀνὴρ, ὁ: a man

ἀντίγραφον, τό: a copy

ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: empirical

ἐξεργάζομαι: to bring to perfection

ἦκω: to have come, be present

ἠνίκα: when

μένω: to stay

νεῦρον, τό: a sinew, tendon

ὄνομα, τό: name

προσφωνέω: to address

τελέως: completely

τότε: at that time, then

ὑπατικός, -ή, -όν: of consular rank

ὑποτύπωσις, -εως, ἡ: an outline, pattern

φιλοσοφέω: to pursue philosophy

φωνή, ἡ: a sound, voice

---

καὶ ... ὑποτύπωσις (sc. ἐδόθη): "and an outline was given to" + dat.

ὧν οὐδέν: "having none of which"

παρὰ τῶν ἐχόντων: "from those possessing them"

ἦκον: impf., "when I came"

ἄλλων ... γραφέντων: ao. part. pas. in gen. abs., "others having been written"

ἔμεινεν: impf., "copies were remaining"

ἐξεργάσθαι: perf. inf. art., "because of having thoroughly worked"

ὧν ἔστι: "of which there are"

προσφωνηθέντα: ao. part. pas., "having been addressed to" + dat.

Βοηθῶ τοῦνομα: Boethus was an important patron of Galen mentioned many times as a true intellectual.

κατὰ τὴν αἵρεσιν: "according to the sect"

τούτῳ καὶ: dat., "to this one also," i.e. Boethus

ἘΡΑΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΟΥ προσπεφώνηται φιλοτιμότερον γεγραμμένα διὰ  
Μαρτιάλιον, οὗ δύο βιβλία διασώζεται τῶν ἀνατομικῶν ἔτι καὶ  
νῦν ὄντα παρὰ πολλοῖς, ἃ κατ' ἐκείνον τὸν χρόνον εὐδοκίμει  
μεγάλως. βάσκανος δὲ καὶ φιλόνεικος ἱκανῶς ἦν ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος  
καίτοι πλείω γεγονῶς ἔτη τῶν ἑβδομήκοντα. πυθόμενος οὖν  
εἰς ἀνατομικὸν πρόβλημα τοὺς τε λόγους καὶ τὰ διδασκόμενα  
μοι δημοσίᾳ πρὸς ἀπάντων τῶν ἀκολουθησάντων ἐπηγήσθαι  
μεγάλως, ἤρετό τινα τῶν ἐμῶν φίλων, ἀπὸ ποίας εἶην αἰρέσεως.

ἀκολουθέω: to follow

ἀνατομικός, -ή, -όν: anatomical

βάσκανος, ὁ: slanderous, malignant

δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public

διασώζω: preserve

ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine

ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend

ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire

ἑβδομήκοντα: seventy

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

εὐδοκίμει: to be held in esteem

ἱκανῶς: adv. "sufficiently"

μεγάλως: (adv.) "greatly"

πλείων, πλέον: more

ποῖος, -α, -ον: of what nature? of what sort?

προσφωνέω: to address

πρόβλημα, -ατος, τό: a problem, set  
question

πυθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry

φιλόνεικος, ον: loving conflict

φιλότιμος, -ον: competitive, combative

περὶ τῆς Ἐρασιστράτου (sc. ἀνατομῆς): the (anatomy) of Erasistratus

προσπεφώνηται: perf., "were addressed"

φιλοτιμότερον: acc. adv., "more combatively written"

Μαρτιάλιον: "on account of Martialis," a contemporary known only from a few  
passages in Galen's works.

οὗ: "whose two books"

διασώζεται: pr., "are saved," i.e. survive

ἔτι καὶ νῦν ὄντα: pr. part., "still even now being"

ἃ ... εὐδοκίμει: "which were admired"

ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος: i.e. Martialis

καίτοι ... γεγονῶς: perf. part. concessive, "despite having been"

τῶν ἑβδομήκοντα: gen. of comp. after πλείω, "more than seventy"

πυθόμενος: ao. part., "he having heard"

τὰ διδασκόμενα: ao. pas. past., "the things taught," i.e. my teachings

δημοσίᾳ: dat. of manner, "publicly"

ἀκολουθησάντων: ao. part. gen. after πρὸς, "from those who had followed"

ἐπηγήσθαι: perf. inf. pas. in ind. st. after πυθόμενος, "learned that the teachings were  
praised"

ἤρετό: ao. of ἐρωτάω, "he asked"

ἀπὸ ποίας εἶην: pr. opt. in ind. quest., "from what sect I was"

ἀκούσας δ' ὅτι δούλους ὀνομάζω τοὺς ἑαυτοὺς ἀναγο-  
ρεύσαντας Ἱπποκρατεῖους ἢ Πραξαγορείους ἢ ὅλως ἀπὸ τινος  
ἀνδρός, ἐκλέγοιμι δὲ τὰ παρ' ἐκάστοις καλά, δεύτερον ἤρετο,  
τίνα μάλιστα τῶν παλαιῶν ἐπαινοῖμι [...] θαυμάσιον δὲ τὸν  
Ἐρασίστρατον ἀποφαίνει τὰ τ' ἄλλα τῆς τέχνης καὶ ταῦτα.

δι' ἐκεῖνον οὖν ἔγραψα φιλοτιμότερον τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἹΠΠΟ-  
ΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΗΣ ἔξ βιβλία καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἘΡΑΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΟΥ  
τρία.

---

ἀναγορεύω: to take the name publicly  
ἀνὴρ, ὄ: a man  
ἀποφαίνω: to show, declare  
δούλος, ὄ: a slave  
ἐκλέγω: to pick or choose  
ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend  
ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire  
θαυμάσιος, -ος, -ον: wondrous, wonderful,  
marvellous

Ἱπποκράτειος, -α, -ον: Hippocratic  
ὅλως: adv., completely  
ὀνομάζω: to name  
παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years  
Πραξαγορείος, -α, -ον: followers of  
Praxagoras  
φιλότιμος, -ον: ambitious, competitive

---

δούλους: pred. acc. after ὀνομάζω, “that I call them *slaves*”

Ἱπποκρατεῖους: pred. acc. after ἀναγορεύσαντας: “those naming themselves  
*Hippocratics*”

Πραξαγορείους: followers of the Hellenistic physician Praxagoras (4th C. BCE)  
(ὅτι) ἐκλέγοιμι: pr. opt. in sec. seq., “having heard *that I chose*”

τίνα ... ἐπαινοῖμι: pr. opt. in sec. seq. in ind. quest. after ἤρετο, “he asked *whom I  
praised*”

[...] There is a small lacuna here.

θαυμάσιον: pred. acc., “that E. was *admirable*”

Ἐρασίστρατον: Erisistratus of Ceos, fl. 250 BCE, a famous anatomist

τά τ' ἄλλα ... καὶ ταῦτα: acc. of resp., “both in other things and especially these”

δι' ἐκεῖνον: “on account of him,” i.e. Martialius

φιλοτιμότερον: acc. adv., “more combatively”

*A public demonstration leads to another book addressed to an individual, but widely circulated later*

καὶ λέγων γέ ποτ' εἰς τὰ τῶν ἰατρῶν τῶν παλαιῶν βιβλία δημοσίᾳ προβληθέντος μοι τοῦ ΠΕΡΙ Αἵματος Ἀναγωγῆς Ἐρασιστράτου καὶ γραφείου καταπαγέντος εἰς αὐτὸ κατὰ τὸ ἔθος, εἶτα δειχθέντος ἐπ' ἐκεῖνο τὸ μέρος τοῦ βιβλίου, καθ' ὃ τὴν φλεβοτομίαν παραιτεῖται, πλείω πρὸς αὐτὸν εἶπον, ὅπως λυπήσαιμι τὸν Μαρτιάλιον Ἐρασιστράτειον εἶναι προσποιούμενον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἰκανῶς ὁ λόγος ἠὺδοκίμησεν, ἐδεήθη μού τις φίλος ἐπαχθῶς ἔχων πρὸς αὐτὸν ὑπαγορεύσαι τὰ ῥηθέντα τῷ πεμφθησομένῳ

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood  
 ἀναγωγή, ἡ: a bringing up  
 γραφείου, τό: pencil  
 δείκνυμι: to point, direct  
 δέομαι: to ask  
 δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public  
 ἔθος, -εος, τό: custom, habit  
 εἶπον: to speak, say  
 ἐπαχθής, -ές: heavy, ponderous  
 Ἐρασιστράτειος, -ον: belonging to Erasistratus  
 εὐδοκίμῳ: to be honoured, popular  
 ἰκανῶς: sufficiently

καταπήγνυμι: to stick fast in the ground, plant firmly  
 λέγω: to speak  
 λυπέω: to pain, discomfort  
 μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share  
 παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years  
 παραιτέομαι: to deprecate  
 πέμπω: to send, despatch  
 πλείων, πλέον: more  
 προβάλλω: to set before, challenge  
 προσποιέω: to pretend to (+ *inf.*)  
 ὑπαγορεύω: to dictate  
 φλεβοτομία, ἡ: blood-letting

εἰς τὰ ... βιβλία: "while speaking *about the books*"

προβληθέντος μοι τοῦ (sc. βιβλίου): ao. part. pas. in gen. abs., "(the book of E.) having been set before me"

γραφείου καταπαγέντος: ao. part. pas. in gen. abs., "the pencil having been fixed" (γραφείου) δειχθέντος: ao. pas. part. in gen. abs., "then the pencil *having been directed to*"

καθ' ὃ: "the part *in which*"

πρὸς αὐτὸν: i.e. toward Martialis

ὅπως λυπήσαιμι: ao. opt. in purp. cl. in sec. seq., "in order to discomfort"

τὸν ... προσποιούμενον: pr. part., "the man pretending to" + inf.

ἠὺδοκίμησεν: ao., "was well-received"

ἐδεήθη: ao. pas. of δέομαι with mid. sense, "someone *asked*" + inf.

ἐπαχθῶς ἔχων: "being hostile"

τὰ ῥηθέντα: ao. pas. of ἐρώ, "the things spoken"

τῷ πεμφθησομένῳ: fut. pas. part. dat. ind. obj., "dictate *to a person that would be sent*"

παρ' αὐτοῦ πρὸς με διὰ σημείων εἰς τάχος ἡσκημένῳ γράφειν, ὅπως, ἂν ἐξορμήσῃ τῆς πόλεως οἴκαδε, δύναίτο λέγειν αὐτὰ πρὸς τὸν Μαρτιάλιον ἐν ταῖς τῶν νοσοῦντων ἐπισκέψεσιν.

ἔπειτ' οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως, ὅτε τὸ δεύτερον ἦκον εἰς Ῥώμην ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτοκρατόρων μετακληθείς, ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἐτεθνήκει, τὸ βιβλίον δ' εἶχον οὐκ ὀλίγοι κατὰ τὴν ἐν τῷ τότε καιρῷ φιλοτιμίαν συγκείμενοι, ἠνίκ' ἤλεγχον δημοσίᾳ: καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ νέος ὢν ἔτι τοῦτ' ἔπραξα τέταρτον ἔτος ἄγων καὶ τριακοστόν.

αὐτοκράτωρ: emperor

ἀσκέω: to practice, train

δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public

ἐλέγχα: to argue, refute

ἐξορμάω: to depart quickly

ἔπειτα: thereupon

ἐπίσκεψις, -εως, ἦ: inspection, visitation

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

ἦκω: to have come

ἠνίκα: at which time, when

θνήσκω: to die

καιρός, ὁ: a (particular) time

μετακαλέω: to summon

νοσέω: to be sick

οἴκαδε: homewards

ὅτε: when

πόλις, -εως, ἦ: a city

Ῥώμη, ἦ: Rome

σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark

σύγκειμαι: to be composed

τάχος, τό: speed

τότε: at that time, then

τριακοστός, -ή, -όν: thirtieth

φιλοτιμία, ἦ: ambition, rivalry

διὰ σημείων εἰς τάχος: “through signs for speed” i.e. some kind of shorthand  
ἡσκημένῳ: perf. part. dat. agreeing with τῷ πεμφθησομένῳ, “who has been trained”  
+ inf.

ὅπως ... δύναίτο: pr. opt. in purp. cl. in sec. seq., “so he would be able to” + inf.

ἂν ἐξορμήσῃ: ao. subj. in pr. gen. protasis, “if ever he departs quickly”

τῶν νοσοῦντων: pr. part., “of those being sick,” i.e. patients

ἔπειτ' οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως: parenthetical, “I don't know how (sc. he died)”

μετακληθείς: ao. pas. part., “having been summoned”

ὁ μὲν λαβὼν: ao. part., “while the one who had taken it”

ἐτεθνήκει: plupf., “he had died”

εἶχον: impf., “not a few *still had*”

συγκείμενον: perf. part., “a book *having been composed*”

ἠνίκ' ἤλεγχον: impf., “when I was in the habit of arguing”

καὶ γὰρ δὴ καί: “and moreover”

ἄγων: pr. part., “*while doing* my thirty-fourth year”



*Galen resolves to perform no more public demonstrations*

ἐξ ἐκείνου δ' ὤρισα μήτε διδάσκειν ἔτι δημοσία μήτ' ἐπι-  
δείκνυσθαι προσδεξαμένης με τῆς κατὰ τοὺς θεραπευομένους  
εὐτυχίας μείζονος εὐχῆς: εἰδὼς γὰρ τοὺς ἀντιτέχνους, ὅταν  
ἐπαινῆται τις ἰατρός, ὡς φθονοῦσιν αὐτὸν λογίατρον ἀποκα-  
λοῦντες, ἀπορράψαι τὴν βάσκανον γλώτταν αὐτῶν ἐβουλήθη  
οὔτ' ἐπὶ τῶν θεραπευομένων φθεγγόμενός τι περαιτέρω τῶν  
ἀναγκαίων οὔτε διδάσκων ἐν πλήθει, καθάπερ ἔμπροσθεν,  
οὔτ' ἐπιδεικνύμενος ἀλλὰ διὰ τῶν ἔργων τῆς τέχνης μόνων  
ἐνδεικνύμενος ἦν εἶχον ἕξιν ἐν τοῖς θεωρήμασιν αὐτῆς.

ἀναγκαῖον, τό: necessity  
ἀντίτεχνος, -ον: rivalling in an art or craft  
ἀποκαλέω: to disparage  
ἀπορράπτω: to sew up  
βάσκανος, ὁ: slanderous, envious  
βούλομαι: to wish (+ *inf.*)  
γλώσσα, -ης, ἡ: a tongue  
δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public  
ἔμπροσθεν: before  
ἐνδείκνυμι: to point out, demonstrate  
ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession, skill  
ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud  
ἐπιδείκνυμι: to make a demonstration

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year  
εὐτυχία, ἡ: success, welfare  
εὐχή, ἡ: a vow, aspiration  
θεραπεύω: to do service, heal  
κενῶω: to empty out, drain  
λογίατρος, ὁ: a physician only in words  
μήτε: and not, neither  
ὀρίζω: to divide, decide  
περαιτέρος, -α, -ον: beyond (+ *gen.*)  
πλήθος, -εος, τό: a crowd, multitude  
προσδέχομαι: to receive favorably, accept  
φθέγγομαι: to utter a sound or voice  
φθονέω: to envy

μήτε διδάσκειν ... μήτε ἐπιδείκνυσθαι: pr. inf. after ὤρισα, "I resolved *neither to teach nor to make public demonstrations*"

προσδεξαμένης: ao. part. in gen. abs. (with μείζονος εὐχῆς), "the greater aspiration *having accepted me*"

τῆς ... εὐτυχίας: "the aspiration *of the welfare*"

κατὰ τοὺς θεραπευομένους: pr. pas. part., "for those being healed"

ὅταν ἐπαινῆται: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., "*whenever a doctor is praised*"

ὡς φθονοῦσιν: ind. st. after εἰδὼς, "knowing *that they (rivals) envy*"

λογίατρον: pred. acc., "calling him a *word doctor*"

ἀπορράψαι: ao. inf. complementing ἐβουλήθη: "I wished *to sew up*"

οὔτε φθεγγόμενός ... οὔτε διδάσκων ... οὔτ' ἐπιδεικνύμενος: pr. part. instr., "by *neither speaking ... nor teaching ... nor giving demonstrations*"

τῶν ἀναγκαίων: gen. of comp. after περαιτέρω, "anything beyond *those necessary*"

ἀλλὰ ... ἐνδεικνύμενος: "but rather *indicating*"

ἦν εἶχον: impf., "the skill *which I was accustomed to have*"

Other works started or completed in Rome

ἔτεσι δὲ τρισὶν ἄλλοις ἐν Ῥώμῃ διατρίψας ἀρξαμένου τοῦ μεγάλου λοιμοῦ παραχρῆμα τῆς πόλεως ἐξήλθον ἐπειγόμενος εἰς τὴν πατρίδα μηδεὶν [...] ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ ΠΕΡΙ ΜΕΝ ΤΩΝ ἹΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΔΟΓΜΑΤΩΝ ἕξ βιβλία συνέγραψα προτρεψαμένου με τοῦ Βοηθοῦ, ΠΕΡΙ ΔΕ ΜΟΡΙΩΝ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ, ἃ λαβὼν ὁ Βοηθὸς ἐξήλθε τῆς πόλεως ἐμοῦ πρότερος, ἀρξων τῆς Παλαιστίνης Συρίας, ἐν ἣ καὶ ἀπέθανεν. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μετὰ πολὺν χρόνον ἐκατέραν τὴν πραγματείαν συνετέλεσα προσγενομένων μοι κωλυμάτων μετὰ τὴν εἰς οἶκον ἐπάνοδον, ὧν ἐφεξῆς μνημονεύσω.

---

ἀποθνήσκω: to die	οἶκος, ὁ: a house, home
ἄρχω: to begin, to rule	Παλαιστίνος, -η, -ον: Palestinian
διατρίβω: to spend time	παραχρῆμα: forthwith, straightway
δόγμα, -ατος, τό: an opinion, dogma	πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: homeland
ἐκάτερος: each of two	Πλάτων, -ωνος, ὁ: Plato
ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of	πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ: a city
ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a return trip	πραγματεία, ἡ: written study
ἐπείγω: to press down, urge	προσγίνομαι: to encounter
ἐφεξῆς: in order	προτρέπω: to urge forwards
κώλυμα, -ατος, τό: a hindrance, obstacle	συγγράφω: to write, compose
λοιμός, ὁ: a plague, pestilence	συντελέω: to complete, accomplish
μνημονεύω: to call to mind, remember	Συρία, ἡ: Syria
μόριον, τό: a piece, part	χρεία, ἡ: use

---

διατρίψας: ao. part., “having spent time”  
 ἀρξαμένου: ao. part. in gen. abs., “the plague *having broken out*”  
 ἐπειγόμενος: pr. mid. part., “urging myself on” i.e. hastening  
 [...]: A lacuna in the text about the plague and the lack of a drug to combat it  
 προτρεψαμένου: ao. part. in gen. abs., “Boethus *having urged me*”  
 ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ (sc. βιβλίον): “one (book), the first”  
 λαβὼν: ao. part., “*having taken* he left”  
 ἐμοῦ πρότερος: “before me”  
 ἀρξων: fut. part. showing purpose, “in order to rule”  
 ἀπέθανεν: ao., “where *he died*”  
 συνετέλεσα: ao., “I brought to completion”  
 προσγενομένων: ao. part. in gen. abs., “obstacles *having been encountered*”  
 μνημονεύσω: fut., “which *I will recount*”

II. Τίνα μοι μετὰ τὴν ἐκ Ῥώμης ἐπάνοδον οἴκαδε παραγε-  
νομένῳ βιβλία παρά τινων ἐδόθη τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένων.

Upon returning to Pergamon, Galen is presented with some of his works  
written while there.

Ἐπανήλθον μὲν οὖν ἐκ Ῥώμης εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πεπλη-  
ρωμένων μοι τῶν ἐκ γενετῆς ἐτῶν ἑπτὰ καὶ τριάκοντα, τρία δέ  
μοι βιβλία παρά τινων ἐδόθη γεγραμμένα, πρὶν εἰς Σμύρναν ἐκ  
Περγάμου μεταβῆναι Πέλοπος τε τοῦ ἱατροῦ καὶ Ἀλβίνου τοῦ  
Πλατωνικοῦ χάριν: ἦν δὲ τὸ μὲν τι ΜΗΤΡΑΣ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΗ, μικρὸν  
βιβλίδιον, τὸ δὲ τι Τῶν Ἐν Ὀφθαλμοῖς Παθῶν Διαγνώσεις, μικρὸν  
καὶ αὐτό, τρίτον δ' ἀξιόλογον τῷ μεγέθει Περὶ τῆς Ἰατρικῆς

Ἀλβίνος, ὁ: Albinus

ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy

βιβλίδιον, τό: little book

γενετή, ἡ: the hour of birth

διάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: a diagnosis

ἐπανερχομαι: to go back, return

ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a return trip

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size

μεταβαίνω: to pass from one place to  
another

μήτρα, ἡ: womb

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little

οἴκαδε: homeward

ὄφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye

πάθος, τό: condition, disease

παραγίνομαι: to be near

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: homeland

Πέλοψ, ὁ: Pelops, a teacher of Galen

Πέργαμον, τό: Pergamum

πληρῶω: to make full

πρὶν: before (+ *inf.*)

Ῥώμη, ἡ: Rome

Σμύρνα, ἡ: Smyrna

τριάκοντα: thirty

χάρις, ἡ: grace, favor

τίνα ... βιβλία ... ἐδόθη: ao. pas., “*what books were given to me*”

μοι παραγενομένῳ: ao. part., “*to me arriving*”

τῶν γεγραμμένων: perf. part., “*of those things written by me*”

ἐπανήλθον: ao. of ἐπι-ἀνα-ἔρχομαι, “*I returned*” (to Rome in 166)

πεπληρωμένων: perf. part. in gen. abs., “*37 years having been completed*”

πρὶν ... μεταβῆναι: ao. inf., “*before I had departed*”

χάριν: acc. of resp., “*for the sake of*” + gen.

τὸ μὲν τι ... τὸ δέ τι: “*there was one .. and another*”

καὶ αὐτό: “*this one also small*”

τῷ μεγέθει: dat. of specification after ἀξιόλογον, “*noteworthy for its size*”

ἘΜΠΕΙΡΙΑΣ. ἐδόθη δὲ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον εἰρημένον μαῖα τινί, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον ὀφθαλμοὺς θεραπεύοντι νεανίσκῳ: τὸ δὲ τρίτον, ἡνίκα Πέλοψ μετὰ Φιλίππου τοῦ ἐμπειρικοῦ διελέχθη δυοῖν ἡμερῶν, τοῦ μὲν Πέλοπος, ὡς μὴ δυναμένης τῆς ἰατρικῆς δι' ἐμπειρίας μόνης συστήναι, τοῦ Φιλίππου δ' ἐπιδεικνύντος δύνασθαι: τοὺς οὖν ὑφ' ἐκατέρου λόγους ῥηθέντας εἰς τάξιν καταστήσας ἔγραψά τι γυμνάσιον ἐμαυτῷ καὶ τοῦτ' οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἐξέπεσεν ἐμοῦ μηδὲν εἰδότης αὐτό.

γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercise  
 διαλέγομαι: to discourse with  
 ἑκάτερος: each of two  
 ἐκπίπτω: to fall out, happen  
 ἐμπειρία, ἡ: experience  
 ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: of the Empiric school  
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day  
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when  
 θεραπεύω: to take care of

ἰατρική, ἡ: medicine  
 καθίστημι: to set down, place  
 μαῖα, ἡ: good mother, dame  
 νεανίσκος, ὁ: youth, young man  
 ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye  
 Πέλοψ, ὁ: Pelops  
 συνίστημι: to set together, compose  
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging, order  
 Φιλίππος, ὁ: Phillip

εἰρημένον: perf. part. of λέγω, “the first *having been mentioned*”  
 μαῖα τινί: dat., “was given to *a certain midwife*”  
 θεραπεύοντι: pr. part. dat., “the second to a young man *treating*”  
 ἡνίκα ... διελέχθη: ao. pas. of δια-λέγομαι, “when Pelops debated with (μετὰ)”  
 δυοῖν: dual gen. of time within which, “*in the course of two days*”  
 τοῦ μὲν Πέλοπος ... ἐπιδεικνύντος: gen. abs., “with Pelops demonstrating”  
 ὡς μὴ δυναμένης: pr. part. in ind. st. after ἐπιδεικνύντος, here expressed with a gen. abs. instead of the acc., “demonstrating that medicine *is not able*” + inf.  
 συστήναι: ao. inf. of συν-ίστημι, “to be composed”  
 Φιλίππου δ' ἐπιδεικνύντος: gen. abs., “with Philip demonstrating”  
 δύνασθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἐπιδεικνύντος, “demonstrating *that it is able*”  
 ῥηθέντας: ao. pas. part. of ἐρώ agreeing with λόγους, “the words *spoken*”  
 καταστήσας: ao. part. transitive, “*having placed* them in order”  
 τι γυμνάσιον: “as a sort of exercise”  
 ὅπως ἐξέπεσεν: ao. in ind. quest. after οἶδα, “I do not know *how it fell*”  
 ἐμοῦ μηδὲν εἰδότης: gen. abs., “with me knowing nothing”

## Galen's works written while studying in Smyrna

τρία δ' ἄλλα ΠΕΡΙ ΘΩΡΑΚΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΝΕΥΜΟΝΟΣ ΚΙΝΗΣΕΩΣ, ἡνίκ' ἐν Σμύρνῃ διέτριβον, ἔγραψα συμφουιτητῇ χαρισάμενος μέλλοντι μετὰ τὴν ἀποδημίαν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πορεύεσθαι χάριν τοῦ μελετήσαντα κατ' αὐτὰ ποιήσασθαι τιν' ἐπίδειξιν ἀνατομικῆν. ἀποθανόντος οὖν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ τοῦ νεανίσκου τὰ βιβλία παρά τισιν ἦν, ὑπονοούμενα τῆς ἐμῆς ἕξεως εἶναι, καί τις ἠλέγχθη προοίμιόν τι τεθεικῶς αὐτοῖς εἶτ' ἀναγιγνώσκων ὡς ἴδια. τούτων τῶν βιβλίων τῷ τρίτῳ κατὰ τὸ τέλος προσέγραψά

---

ἀναγιγνώσκω: to circulate (by reading)

ἀποδημία, ἡ: a trip abroad

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

διατρίβω: to spend time

ἐλέγχω: to question, refute, prove

ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession, habit (of mind)

ἐπίδειξις, -εως, ἡ: a demonstration

ἡνίκα: at which time, when

θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: chest

κίνησις, ἡ: movement, motion

μελετάω: to care for, attend to

μέλλω: to intend to, to be about to (+ *inf.*)

μεταξύ: between

νεάνισκος, ὁ: youth, young man

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: homeland

πνεύμων, ὁ: lung

πορεύω: to make one's way, go

προοίμιον, τό: an introduction

προσγράφω: to add in writing

Σμύρνα, ἡ: Smyrna

συμφουιτητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a school-fellow

τέλος, -εος, τό: an end, goal, completion

τίθημι: to set, put, place

ὑπονοέω: to suspect

χαρίζω: to do a favor

χάρις, ἡ: grace, favor

---

χαρισάμενος: ao. part., "having done a favor for" + dat.

μέλλοντι: agreeing with συμφουιτητῇ, "who was about to" + inf.

χάριν: acc. of resp., "for the sake of" + gen.

τοῦ ... ποιήσασθαι: ao. inf. art. gen. after χάριν, "for the sake of (him) to do"

μελετήσαντα: ao. part. agreeing with the acc. subject of ποιήσασθαι, instr., "(him) by having practiced"

ἀποθανόντος: ao. part. in gen. abs. with τοῦ νεανίσκου, "the young man having died"

παρά τισιν: "was with some others"

ὑπονοούμενα (sc. βιβλία): pr. part. pas., "the books being suspected" + inf.

τῆς ἐμῆς ἕξεως: pred. gen. after εἶναι, "to be of my habit" i.e. typical of me

ἠλέγχθη: ao. pas. of ἐλέγχω, "someone was proved to have" + part.

τεθεικῶς: perf. act. part. of τίθημι supplementing ἠλέγχθη, "proved to have placed"

ἀναγιγνώσκων: pr. part. also supplementing ἠλέγχθη, "and to be circulating it"

τῷ τρίτῳ: "to the third of these"

προσέγραψα: ao., "I appended"

τινα τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ προσεξευρισκομένων ἐπαγγελίαν ἔχοντα:  
τὰ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς τρισὶ γεγραμμένα Πέλοπος ἦν τοῦ διδασκάλου  
δόγματα, παρ' ᾧ διατρίβων κατὰ Σμύρναν ἔγραψα ταῦτα.

*No sooner has he returned home than he is summoned to Aquileia by the emperor*

ἐγὼ μὲν καθιδρύσας ἑμαυτὸν ἐν τῇ πατρίδι μετὰ τὴν ἐκ  
Ῥώμης ἐπάνοδον εἰχόμεν τῶν συνήθων: ἀφίκετο δ' εὐθέως ἐξ  
Ἄκυλλίας τὰ παρὰ τῶν αὐτοκρατόρων γράμματα καλούντων  
με: προήρητο γὰρ αὐτοὶ χεμάσαντες ἐπὶ τοὺς Γερμανοὺς ἐξε-  
λαύνειν. ἐπορεύθην μὲν οὖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης, ἐλπίζων δὲ τεύξεσθαι

---

Ἄκυλλία, ἡ: the city Aquileia in NE Italy  
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity  
αὐτοκράτωρ, ὁ: emperor  
ἀφικέομαι: to come to  
Γερμανοί, οἱ: the Germans  
γράμμα, -ατος, τό: a letter  
διατρίβω: to spend time  
διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master  
ἐλπίζω: to hope for, expect  
ἐξελαύνω: to drive out from  
ἐπαγγελία, ἡ: a public notice  
ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a return trip  
εὐθέως: immediately

καθιδρύω: to establish  
καλέω: to call or summon  
πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: homeland  
Πέλοψ, ὁ: Pelops  
πορεύω: to make one's way  
προαιρέομαι: to choose, decide  
προεξευρίσκω: to discover in addition  
Ῥώμη, ἡ: Rome  
Σμύρνα, ἡ: Smyrna  
συνήθης, -ες: customary  
τυγχάνω: to hit upon (+ *gen.*)  
χεμάζω: to pass the winter

---

προεξευρισκομένων: pr. part. of προσ-εξ-εὐρίσκω, “of the things *discovered in addition*”

τινα ἔχοντα: n. pl. acc., “I appended *some (pages) having*”

τὰ ... γεγραμμένα: perf. part., “the things written”

δόγματα: pred., “were *the doctrines*”

παρ' ᾧ: “of P. *next to whom*”

καθιδρύσας: ao. part., “*having established* myself”

εἰχόμεν: impf. mid., “I concerned myself with” + gen.

ἀφίκετο: ao., “letters *arrived*”

καλούντων: pr. part. agreeing with αὐτοκρατόρων, “from the emperors *summoning* me”

προήρητο: plupf. of προ-αἰρέομαι, “they had decided” + inf.

χεμάσαντες: ao. part., “once they had passed the winter”

ἐπορεύθην: ao. pas., “I travelled”

τεύξεσθαι: fut. inf. after ἐλπίζων, “hoping to chance upon” + gen.

παραιτήσεως: ἤκουον γὰρ εἶναι τὸν ἕτερον αὐτῶν, τὸν πρεσβύτερον, εὐγνώμονά τε καὶ μέτριον ἡμερόν τε καὶ πρῶον, ὃς ἐκαλεῖτο μὲν ἐξ ἀρχῆς Βῆρος, ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀντωνίνος ὁ μετὰ τὸν Ἀδριανὸν ἄρξας διάδοχον αὐτὸν ἔθετο τῆς ἀρχῆς, τὸν μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὀνομαζόμενον Λούκιον κοινωνὸν ἐποίησατο καλέσας Βῆρον, ἑαυτὸν δὲ μετωνόμασεν Ἀντωνῖνον.

Ἀδριανός, ὁ: Hadrian

Ἀντωνίνος, ὁ: Antoninus

ἀρχή, ἡ: the first place, the rule

ἄρχω: to be first

Βῆρος, ὁ: Verus

διάδοχος, -ον: succeeding

ἔμπροσθεν: before, in front

εὐγνώμων, -ον: reasonable, indulgent

ἡμερος: tame, mild

καλέω: to call

κοινωνός, ὁ: a companion, partner

μετονομάζω: to call by a new name

μέτριος, -α, -ον: within measure

ὀνομάζω: to name, call

παραίτησις, -εως, ἡ: a petition (for leave)

πρᾶος, -ον: soft, gentle

πρεσβύτερος, -η, -ον: older

τίθημι: to set, put, place

εἶναι τὸν ἕτερον: ind. st. after ἤκουον, “for I heard *that one of them was*”

εὐγνώμονα, etc.: pred. acc., “was *reasonable*”

ἐξ ἀρχῆς: “from the beginning,” i.e. originally

ὁ ... ἄρξας: ao. part., “*the one who ruled* after Hadrian” i.e. Antoninus Pius (138-161)

ἔθετο: ao. mid., “A. *established* him”

διάδοχον: pred. acc., “*established* him *successor*”

τὸν ... Λούκιον: “the *previously* named Lucius”

κοινωνὸν: pred. acc., “he *made* him *co-ruler*”

καλέσας: ao. part., “*having called* him Verus” i.e. changing his name from Lucius to Verus

μετωνόμασεν: ao. of μετα-ὀνομάζω, “he *changed* his own name”

Ἀντωνῖνον: acc. pred., “he *changed* his own name to *Antoninus*.” This Antoninus, whose original name was Verus, is now generally known as Marcus Aurelius. see box

### The Antonine Emperors

The four successors of Hadrian all had Antoninus as one of their names, along with other titles. Today these emperors are referred to by the bold names below. Lucius Verus and Marcus Aurelius were co-emperors, as were Marcus Aurelius and his son Commodus.

*Hadrian* (Caesar Publius Aelius Traianus **Hadrianus** Augustus): 117-138

*Antoninus Pius* (Caesar Titus Aelius Hadrianus **Antoninus** Augustus **Pius**): 138-161

*Lucius Verus* (Caesar **Lucius** Aurelius **Verus** Augustus): 161-169

*Marcus Aurelius* (Caesar **Marcus Aurelius** Antoninus Augustus): 161-180

*Commodus* (Caesar Marcus Aurelius **Commodus** Antoninus Augustus): 177-192

*A plague breaks out in Aquileia and Galen returns to Rome with Commodus*

ἐπιβάντος οὖν μου τῆς Ἀκυληίας κατέσκηψεν ὁ λοιμὸς ὡς οὔπω πρότερον, ὥστε τοὺς μὲν αὐτοκράτορας αὐτίκα φεύγειν εἰς Ῥώμην ἅμα στρατιώταις ὀλίγοις, ἡμᾶς δὲ τοὺς πολλοὺς μόλις ἐν χρόνῳ πολλῷ διασωθῆναι πλείστων ἀπολλυμένων οὐ μόνον διὰ τὸν λοιμὸν ἀλλὰ καὶ διὰ τὸ μέσου χειμῶνος εἶναι τὰ πραττόμενα. μεταστάντος δ' ἐξ ἀνθρώπων τοῦ Λουκίου κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν εἰς Ῥώμην αὐτοῦ κομίσας τὸ σῶμα τὴν ἀποθέωσιν Ἄντωνίνος ἐποίησατο καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τῆς ἐπὶ τοὺς Γερμανοὺς στρατείας εἶχετο περὶ παντὸς ποιούμενος ἀπάγειν με,

Ἀκυληία, ἡ: the city Aquileia  
 ἅμα: together with (+ *dat.*)  
 ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off  
 ἀποθέωσις, -εως, ἡ: deification  
 ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy, kill, slay  
 αὐτίκα: forthwith, straightway, at once  
 αὐτοκράτωρ, ὁ: emperor  
 Γερμανοί, οἱ: the Germans  
 διασώζω: to preserve  
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon, to arrive  
 κατασκήπτω: to rush down, break out  
 κομίζω: to take care of, provide for  
 λοιμὸς, ὁ: a plague, pestilence

μεθίστημι: to depart  
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle  
 μόλις: scarcely  
 οὐδός, ἡ: a way  
 οὔπω: not yet  
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest  
 πρότερον: before  
 στρατεία, ἡ: an expedition, campaign  
 στρατιώτης, ὁ: a soldier  
 σῶμα, τό: a body  
 φεύγω: to flee, take flight  
 χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter

ἐπιβάντος: ao. part. gen. abs., “me having arrived” + gen.  
 κατέσκηψεν: ao. of κατα-σκηπτω, “broke out”  
 ὥστε ... φεύγειν: ao. inf. in res. cl., “so that they fled”  
 διασωθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. also in res. cl. after ὥστε, “so that we hardly *survived*”  
 πλείστων ἀπολλυμένων: gen. abs., “with most dying”  
 διὰ τὸ ... εἶναι: art. inf., “also *because of* the deeds *being*”  
 μέσου χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, “in the middle of winter”  
 τὰ πραττόμενα: pr. part. n. pl. subj. of εἶναι, “*the things* being done”  
 μεταστάντος: ao. part. intransitive of μετα-ἵστημι in gen. abs., “Lucius *having departed*” i.e. died  
 κομίσας: ao. part., “Antonius, *having take care of* the body”  
 ἐποίησατο: ao., “*he performed* the deification ceremony”  
 εἶχετο: impf. mid., “he concerned himself with” + gen.  
 περὶ παντὸς: “beyond everything”  
 ποιούμενος: pr. part., “contriving to” + inf.



πεισθεὶς δ' ἀφείναι λέγοντος ἀκούσας τάναντία κελύειν τὸν  
 πάτριον θεὸν Ἀσκληπιόν, οὗ καὶ θεραπευτὴν ἀπέφαινον ἑμαυτόν,  
 ἐξ ὅτου με θανατικὴν διάθεσιν ἀποστήματος ἔχοντα διέσωσε,  
 προσκυνήσας τὸν θεὸν καὶ περιμείναι με τὴν ἐπάνοδον αὐτοῦ

ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce  
 ἀπόστημα, -ατος, τό: an abscess  
 Ἀσκληπιός, ὁ: Asclepius  
 ἀφήμι: to release, discharge  
 διασώζω: preserve through  
 διάθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a condition  
 ἑμαυτοῦ: of me, of myself  
 ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite  
 ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a journey back

θανατικός, -ή, -όν: deadly  
 θεραπευτής, -οῦ: a worshipper  
 κελύω: to command, order  
 πάτριος, -α, -ον: of or belonging to one's  
 father  
 πείθω: to prevail upon, win over, persuade  
 περιμένω: to wait for, await  
 προσκυνέω: to make obeisance, respect

πεισθεὶς: ao. pas. part., “but having been persuaded to” + inf.

ἀφείναι: perf. inf. of ἀπο-ἵημι, “to release”

λέγοντος: pr. part. gen. after τάναντία, “the opposite of *him speaking*” i.e. the  
 opposite of what the emperor was saying

κελύειν: inf. in ind. st. after ἀκούσας, “having heard that the god *was ordering*”

οὗ: gen., “whose servant”

ἀπέφαινον: impf., “I *was declaring myself*”

ἐξ ὅτου: “since the time when”

ἔχοντα: pr. part. circum. agreeing with με, “when I had”

διέσωσε: ao. of δια-σώζω, “he *saved me*”

προσκυνήσας: ao. part., “(Antonius) *having respected* the god”

περιμείναι: ao. inf. after κελύσας, “having ordered me *to await*”

### Note the different meanings of the word αὐτός:

#### 1. Without the definite article

- The nominative forms of the word always are intensive (= Latin ipse): αὐτὸς  
 οἶσθα: “you yourself know”; αὐτὸς μὲν ἐξῆλθε, “while he himself left”;  
 προήρηντο γὰρ αὐτοὶ: “they themselves decided.”
- The other cases of the word are the unemphatic third person pronouns:  
 him, them, etc. τὴν εὑρεσιν αὐτῶν: the discovery of these things; δυνατὸν  
 ἔστιν αὐτῷ, “it is possible for him”; διάδοχον αὐτὸν ἔθετο: “he made him  
 successor.”

#### 2. With the definite article

- In predicative position, it is also intensive (= Latin ipse): πρὸς τὸν  
 Ἐρασίστρατον αὐτὸν: “to Erisistratus himself”
- In attributive position or with no noun, it means “the same”: τὴν αὐτὴν δόξαν  
 ἔχων: having the same opinion; ὁ δ' αὐτὸς οὖτος: “this same person”

κελεύσας -- ἤλπιζε γὰρ ἐν τάχει κατορθώσῃ τὸν πόλεμον --  
αὐτὸς μὲν ἐξῆλθε, καταλιπὼν δὲ τὸν υἱὸν Κόμμοδον, παιδίον  
ἔτ' ὄντα κομιδῇ νέον, ἐνετείλατο τοῖς τρέφουσιν αὐτὸ πειρᾶσθαι  
μὲν ὑγιαῖνον φυλάττειν, εἰ δέ ποτε νοσήσειε, καλεῖν ἐπὶ τὴν  
θεραπείαν ἐμέ.

ἐλπίζω: to hope for, expect (+ *inf.*)  
ἐντέλλω: to enjoin, command  
ἐξέρχομαι: to go out, come out  
θεραπεία, ἦ: a waiting on, service  
καταλείπω: to leave behind  
κατορθόω: to set upright, succeed  
κελεύω: to command, order  
κομιδῇ: exactly, just, quite  
Κόμμοδος, ο: Commodos  
νέος, -α, -ον: young

νοσέω: to be sick, ill, to ail  
παιδίον, τό: small child  
πειράω: to attempt, try to (+ *inf.*)  
πόλεμος, ό: battle, fight, war  
τάχος, τό: swiftness, speed  
τρέφω: to care for, nourish  
υἱός, ό: a son  
ὑγιαίνω: to be sound, healthy or in health  
φυλάττω: to keep watch

κατορθώσῃ: fut. inf. after ἤλπιζε, "he expected *to succeed*"

καταλιπὼν: ao. part., "having left behind"

ἐνετείλατο: ao. of ἐν-τέλλω, "he commanded" + dat. + inf.

τοῖς τρέφουσιν: pr. part. dat., "commanded *those caring for him*"

φυλάττειν: pr. inf. after πειρᾶσθαι, "to try *to keep him healthy*"

εἰ ... νοσήσειε: ao. opt. in fut. less vivid protasis, "but if he were to become ill"

καλεῖν: pr. inf. in ind. command after ἐνετείλατο, and also an apodosis of the condition, "that they should call me"

### Defective Verbs

The principal parts of some verbs come from completely different words. Sometimes there are more than one form for a specific tense, in which case one will usually be preferred. Here are some important examples:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist Passive
ἔρχομαι (go)	εἶμι	ἦλθον	ἐγήλουθα	
λέγω (speak)	λέξω ἔρέω	ἔλεξα εἶπον	λέλεγμαι εἶρηκα	ἐλέχθην ἐρρήθην
φέρω (carry)	οἴσω	ἦνεγchon	ἐνήνοχα	ἠνέχθην
αἰρέω (take)	αἰρήσω	εἶλον	ἦρηκα	ἠρέθην
ὁράω (see)	ὄψομαι		ἑώρακα	
impf. εἴρωμαι		εἶδον	οἶδα (know)	
			fut. εἴσομαι	plupf. ἦδη

While in Rome he continues his research.

κατὰ τοῦτον οὖν τὸν χρόνον συνελεξάμην τε καὶ εἰς ἕξιν ἤγαγον μόνιμον ἅ τε παρὰ τῶν διδασκάλων ἐμεμαθήκειν ἅ τ' αὐτὸς εὐρήκειν, ἔτι τε ζητῶν ἕνια περὶ τὴν εὔρεσιν αὐτῶν ἔγραψα πολλὰ γυμνάζων ἐμαντὸν ἐν πολλοῖς προβλήμασιν ἰατρικοῖς τε καὶ φιλοσόφοις, ὧν τὰ πλείεστα διεφθάρη κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην πυρκαϊάν, ἐν ἣ τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος

γυμνάζω: to exercise, train

διαφθείρω: to destroy utterly

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

Εἰρήνη, ἡ: Peace

ἕνιοι, -α.: some

ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession

εὔρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a finding, discovery

εὐρίσκω: to find

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

μόνιμος, -η, -ον: stable, fixed

πλείεστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πρόβλημα, -ατος, τό: problem, challenge

πυρκαϊά, ἡ: a conflagration

συλλέγω: to collect, gather

τέμενος, -εος, τό: a temple

συνελεξάμην: ao. mid. of *συν-λέγω*, “I collected”

ἤγαγον: ao. of *ἄγω*, “I brought into (*εἰς*) a stable condition”

ἅ τε ... ἅ τ': “both that which... and that which”

ἐμεμαθήκειν: plupf. of *μανθάνω*, “I had learned”

εὐρήκειν: plupf. (unaugmented), “I had discovered”

ἔτι τε ζητῶν: pr. part., “and still investigating some things”

γυμνάζων: pr. part., “exercising myself”

ὧν: gen. pl., “whose greatest parts”

διεφθάρη: ao. pas. of *δια-φθείρω*, “were destroyed”

ἐν ἣ: “the conflagration in which”

τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος: the Temple of Peace was used as a depository for books and was destroyed in the fire of 192 CE, although the books Galen lost in this fire now seem to have been in other buildings.

### The Fire of 192 AD

On two occasions in *On My Own Books*, Galen mentions the great fire in Rome in 192, which destroyed many of his books, instruments and medical supplies. More details about this fire and its effects are found in a newly discovered essay of Galen, *On the Avoidance of Grief*, ed. V. Boudon-Millot (Budé, 2005). An excellent discussion of this and other evidence for the fire is provided by Pier Luigi Tucci, “Galen’s Storeroom, Rome’s Libraries, and the Fire of a.d. 192.” *Journal of Roman Archaeology* 21 (2008), 133–49. Tucci uses the evidence of this new essay to show that Galen’s works lost in the fire were actually housed in storehouses along the via sacra that were destroyed in the same fire. He provides detailed maps of the area. The *vicus sandaliarius* mentioned in the opening lines of *On My Own Books* is near the Temple of Peace.

ἅμα καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις ἐκαύθη. καὶ χρονίσαντός γε κατὰ τὴν ἀποδημίαν παρὰ πᾶσαν ἐλπίδα τοῦ Ἀντωνίνου σύμπας ἐκείνος ὁ χρόνος ἀξιολογωτάτην τὴν ἄσκησίν μοι παρέσχεν, ὡς τὴν τε ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΜΟΡΙΩΝ πραγματεῖαν ἐν ἑπτὰ καὶ δέκα πληρῶσαι βιβλίοις προσθεῖναι τε τὰ λείποντα τῇ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἸΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΔΟΓΜΑΤΩΝ.

*Galen does research on some anatomical subjects at this time as well.*

ἔτι δὲ ζητῶν τινα τῶν ἀνατομικῶν θεωρημάτων, ἃ ἐδεδώκειν τῷ Βοηθῷ [...] τοῦ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΜΟΡΙΩΝ ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ δεδήλωται τοὺς κινούντας τὸ ἄρθρον ἐκάστου δακτύλου μῦς

ἅμα: together with (+ <i>dat.</i> )	κινέω: to set in motion, to move
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy	λείπω: to leave, quit
ἀποδημία, ἡ: a going or being abroad	μόριον, τό: a part, section
ἄρθρον, τό: a joint	μῦς, ὁ: a muscle
ἄσκησις, -εως, ἡ: exercise, training	παρέχω: to provide, supply
Βοηθός, ὁ: Boethus	Πλάτων, -ωνος, ὁ: Plato
δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger	πληρῶω: to make full, complete
δηλώω: to show, exhibit	πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation	προστίθημι: to put X ( <i>acc.</i> ) to Y ( <i>dat.</i> )
ἑπτὰ: seven	σύμπας: all together
ζητέω: to seek, seek for	χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service
καίω: to light, kindle	χρονίζω: to spend time, linger

ἐκαύθη: ao. pas. of *καίω*, “were burned”

χρονίσαντός: ao. part. in gen. abs. with *Ἀντωνίνου*, “Ant. *having lingered*”

ἀξιολογωτάτην: pred. adj., “study that was *most worthy*”

μοι παρέσχεν: ao. of *παρα-ἔχω*, “that time *provided to me*”

ὡς ... πληρῶσαι: ao. inf. in res. cl., “so that I completed”

προσθεῖναι τε: ao. inf. also in res. cl., “and I added X (*acc.*) to Y (*dat.*)”

τὰ λείποντα: pr. part. acc. pl., “the remaining things”

τῇ (sc. *πραγματεῖη*): *dat.* after *προσθεῖναι*, “to add *to the work*”

ἔτι δὲ ζητῶν: “while still investigating”

ἐδεδώκειν: plupf. of *δίδωμι*, “which *I had given*”

[...]: a brief lacuna

τοῦ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΜΟΡΙΩΝ: “in the second (book) *of the* On the Usefulness of the Parts”

δεδήλωται: perf. impersonal, “it is shown”

τοὺς κινούντας ... μῦς: acc. pl. subj. of ind. st. after *δεδήλωται*, “that the muscles which move” + inf.

προσεξευρησθαι μοι ἅπαντας ἀγνοηθέντας ἄχρι πολλοῦ, καθάπερ ἅπασι τοῖς πρὸ ἐμοῦ. ἀνεβαλόμην δ' ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ πραγματεία καὶ περὶ τῆς κινήσεως τῶν ἄνω βλεφάρων ἐρεῖν εἰσαυθις ἐπιδείξας ἐν αὐτῇ τοῦτο μόνον, ὡς αἱ λεγόμεναι πρὸς τινων οὐκ εἰσὶν ἀληθεῖς. ὅποτε δ' ἐμαυτὸν τ' ἔπεισα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, οἷς ἔδειξα, καὶ ταύτην εὐρήσθαι μοι καὶ τᾶλλα, ὅσα κατὰ τὰς ἀνατομὰς ἢ κακῶς εἴρηται τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν ἢ ὅλως παραλέλειπται τηνικαῦτ' ἤδη καὶ τὰς ἈΝΑΤΟΜΙΚΑΣ ἜΓΧΕΙΡΗΣΕΙΣ ἔγραψα.

ἀγνοέω: not to know

ἀληθής, -ές: true

ἀναβάλλω: to throw up, defer

ἄνω: upwards

ἄχρι: up to (+ *gen.*)

βλέφαρα, τά: eyelid

δείκνυμι: to display, exhibit

ἐγχείρησις, -εως, ἡ: an undertaking, procedure

εἰσαυθις: hereafter, afterwards

ἔμπροσθεν: before, in front

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to demonstrate

εὐρίσκω: to find

καθάπερ: just as

κακός, -ή, -όν: bad

κίνησις, ἡ: movement, motion

ὅποτε: whenever

ὅλως; completely

παραλείπω: to leave behind

πείθω: to prevail upon, persuade

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

προσεξευρίσκω: to find out besides, discover

τηνικαῦτα: at that time, then

προσεξευρησθαι: perf. inf. pas. after δεδήλωται, “were discovered by me”

ἀγνοηθέντας: ao. pas. part. circum., “which were all unknown to me”

ἄχρι πολλοῦ: “for a long (time)”

τοῖς πρὸ ἐμοῦ: “unknown to those before me”

ἀνεβαλόμην: ao. of ἀνα-βάλλω: “I deferred to” + inf.

ἐρεῖν: fut. inf. of λέγω, complementing ἀνεβαλόμην, “I deferred saying”

ἐπιδείξας: ao. part., “having demonstrated”

ὡς ... οὐκ εἰσὶν: noun cl. in apposition to τοῦτο, “this, namely that they are not true”

αἱ λεγόμεναι (sc. δόξαι): “(opinions) that were spoken”

πρὸς τινων: “from some individuals”

ὅποτε ... τηνικαῦτ': “whenever ... at that time”

οἷς ἔδειξα: ao., “others to whom I showed it”

ταύτην εὐρήσθαι: perf. pas. inf. after ἔπεισα, “when I persuaded that this was discovered by me”

ὅσα ... εἴρηται: perf. pas., “whatever was spoken”

τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν: dat. of agent with passive, “by those before me”

παραλέλειπται: perf. pas., “or was completely passed over”

On the Usefulness of the Parts *begins to stir up controversy*

φθασάντων δὲ τῶν περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰς πολλοὺς ἀφίχθαι σπουδαζομένων τε τοῖς ἰατροῖς σχεδὸν ἅπασιν, ὅσοι τὴν παλαιὰν ἰατρικὴν μετεχειρίζοντο, καὶ τῶν φιλοσόφων τοῖς ἀπ' Ἀριστοτέλους, ἐπειδὴ κάκείνω τοιαύτη τις ἐγεγόνει πραγματεία, τῶν βασκάνων τινὲς ὑπὸ φθόνου τὴν πόλιν ἐπλήρωσαν τῆς μοχθηρᾶς φήμης, ὡς ἔνεκα τοῦ δόξαι πάμπολυ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν ὑπερβεβλήσθαι πολλὰ τῶν οὐδ' ὅλως φαινομένων ἐν ταῖς ἀνατομαῖς γράψαμι: μὴ γὰρ ἂν ἅπαντας αὐτὰ λαθεῖν.

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive  
 βάσκανος, ὁ: an envious person  
 δοκέω: to seem to (+ *inf.*)  
 ἔμπροσθεν: before, in front  
 ἔνεκα: on account of (+ *gen.*)  
 λανθάνω: to escape notice  
 μετεχειρίζω: to handle, study  
 μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν: wretched, hateful  
 μόριον, τό: a piece, part  
 ὅλως: completely  
 παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, ancient  
 πάμπολυ: very much

πληρῶω: to make full  
 πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ: a city  
 πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work  
 σπουδάζω: to seek eagerly  
 σχεδόν: close, nearly  
 ὑπερβάλλω: to throw beyond, surpass  
 φαίνομαι: to be visible  
 φήμη, ἡ: a voice, rumor  
 φθάνω: to come or do before  
 φθόνος, ὁ: ill-will, envy, jealousy  
 χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

φθασάντων δὲ τῶν (sc. βιβλίων): ao. part. of φθάνω in gen. abs., “the books having already” + *inf.*

ἀφίχθαι: perf. mid. *inf.* complementing φθασάντων, “having already arrived”

σπουδαζομένων: pr. part. pas. also with βιβλίων, “being eagerly sought”

τοῖς ἰατροῖς: dat. of agent with passive, “by doctors”

ὅσοι ... μετεχειρίζοντο: impf., “who were studying”

κάκείνω: dat. of agent, “produced by that one also”

ἐγεγόνει: plupf., “a work had been produced”

ὑπὸ φθόνου: moved by envy”

ἐπλήρωσαν: ao., “they filled X (acc) with Y (gen.)

ὡς ... γράψαμι: ao. opt. in ind. st. in sec. seq., “the rumor that I described many things”

τοῦ δόξαι: ao. *inf.* art. gen. with ἔνεκα, “for the sake of seeming” + *inf.*

ὑπερβεβλήσθαι: perf. mid. *inf.* after δόξαι, “seeming to have surpassed”

τῶν ... φαινομένων: part. gen. with πολλὰ, “that I described a large number of things not being wholly visible”

μὴ γὰρ ἂν ... λαθεῖν: ao. *inf.* in ind. st., representing a pot. opt., “for (they claimed) that these things would not have escaped the notice of all”

ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἐγέλων τε καὶ κατεφρόνουν αὐτῶν: ἀγανακτοῦντες δ' οἱ φίλοι παρεκάλουν με δημοσίᾳ δείξαι κατὰ τι τῶν μεγάλων ἀκουστηρίων τὴν ἀλήθειαν τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένων ἀνατομικῶν θεωρημάτων. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐκ ἐπειθόμην -- ἤδη γὰρ οὕτως εἶχον, ὡς μὴ πεφροντικένοι τῆς δόξης, -- οἰηθέντες οἱ βάσκανοι ἐξελεγχθῆναί με φοβούμενοι, οὐ καταφρονοῦντα τῆς φλυαρίας αὐτῶν προσποιεῖσθαι μεγαλοφροσύνην, οὐδὲ τοῦ σκώπτειν ἀπέιχοντο καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν εἰς τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος

ἀγανακτέω: to feel irritation  
 ἀκουστήριον, τό: lecture-hall  
 ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from, desist  
 βάσκανος, -ον: slanderous, malicious  
 γελάω: to laugh  
 δείκνυμι: to display, exhibit  
 δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public  
 δόξα, ἡ: reputation  
 ἐξελέγχω: to refute  
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day  
 καταφρονέω: to think down upon, despise

καταφρονέω: to think down upon, despise  
 μεγαλοφροσύνη, ἡ: highmindedness  
 οἶμαι: to suppose, think  
 παρακαλέω: to call to  
 πείθω: to persuade  
 προσποιέω: to make over to, attribute  
 σκώπτω: to mock, jeer  
 τέμενος, -εος, τό: a temple  
 φλυαρία, ἡ: silly talk, nonsense, foolery  
 φοβέομαι: to fear  
 φροντίζω: to think, consider

ἐγέλων: impf., “I used to laugh”

δείξαι: ao. inf. in ind. command after παρεκάλουν, “they kept urging me to demonstrate”

κατὰ τι: “in one of” + gen.

γεγραμμένων: perf. pas. part., “of the treatises written by me”

οὐκ ἐπειθόμην: impf. pas., “I was not persuaded”

οὕτως εἶχον: impf., “I was in such a state”

ὡς μὴ πεφροντικένοι: perf. inf. in res. cl., “so that I wasn’t concerned with” + gen.

οἰηθέντες: ao. pas. part. of οἶμαι, “having supposed” + inf.

ἐξελεγχθῆναί: ao. pas. inf. complementing φοβούμενοι, “me fearing to be refuted,”

με φοβούμενοι: pr. part. acc., “me fearing,” i.e., the idea that I was fearing”

(με) οὐ καταφρονοῦντα: pr. part. acc., “not (me) looking down on” i.e., rather than the fact that I was looking down on” + gen.

προσποιεῖσθαι: pr. inf. after οἰηθέντες, “having supposed to attribute my highmindedness to me being,” i.e., to the fact that I was

τοῦ σκώπτειν: pr. inf. art. gen. after ἀπέιχοντο, “they would not desist from mocking”

τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος: “the temple of Peace” built by Vespasian in 75 CE.

ἀφικνούμενοι, καθ' ὃ τι καὶ πρὸ τοῦ καυθῆναι πᾶσιν ἦν ἔθος  
ἀθροίζεσθαι τοῖς τὰς λογικὰς τέχνας μεταχειριζομένοις.

*Friends compel Galen to defend his assertions in a public demonstration*

ἀναγκασθεὶς οὖν ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων καὶ δείξας δημοσίᾳ πολλαῖς  
ἡμέραις ἑμαυτὸν μὲν οὐδὲν ἐψευσμένον, ἡγνοηκότας δὲ πολλὰ  
τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν, ἔγραψα παρακληθεὶς ὑπ' αὐτῶν ὑπομνήματα  
τῶν δειχθέντων τε καὶ λεχθέντων, ἐπιγέγραπται δὲ ταῦτα ΠΕΡΙ  
ΤΩΝ ἌΓΝΟΗΘΕΝΤΩΝ Τῷ ΛΥΚῶ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΑΣ ἌΝΑΤΟΜΑΣ διὰ τήνδε τὴν  
αἰτίαν. ὁπότε προῆλθον ἐπιδείξω ἑμαυτὸν οὐδὲν ἐψευσμένον ἐν

---

ἀγνοέω: not to know

ἀθροίζω: to gather together, to muster

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to

δείκνυμι: to display, exhibit

δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public

ἔθος, -εος, τό: custom, habit

ἔμπροσθεν: before

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

καίω: to light, kindle

μεταχειρίζω: to handle, practice

ὁπότε: when

παρακαλέω: to summon

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό: a commentary

ψεύδω: to cheat, falsify

---

καθ' ὃ: "in which spot"

τοῦ καυθῆναι: ao. inf. pas. art. after πρὸ, "even before having been burnt" (in a fire in 192 CE)

ἀθροίζεσθαι: pr. inf. epex. after ἔθος, "it was the custom to gather"

τοῖς ... μεταχειριζομένοις: pr. part. dat., "custom for those practicing"

ἀναγκασθεὶς: ao. pas. part. of ἀναγκάζω, "having been compelled"

δείξας: ao. part., "having demonstrated publicly"

ἐψευσμένον: perf. part. in ind. st. after δείξας, "that I had falsified nothing"

ἡγνοηκότας: perf. part. in ind. st. after δείξας, "that those were ignorant"

παρακληθεὶς: ao. pas. part., "having been called upon"

τῶν δειχθέντων τε καὶ λεχθέντων: ao. pas. part. of δείκνυμι and λέγω, "notes of the things demonstrated and argued"

ἐπιγέγραπται: perf., "these were entitled"

τῶν ἀγνοηθέντων: ao. pas. part., "about the things unknown to" + dat.

Λύκῳ: Lycus of Macedon, a student of Quintus about whom Galen has little good to say

ἐπιδείξω: fut. part. showing purpose, "I advanced in order to demonstrate"

ἐψευσμένον: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἐπιδείξω, "that I had falsified nothing"



τοῖς ἀνατομικοῖς ὑπομνήμασιν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀνέθηκα τὰ τῶν ἀνατομικῶν ἀπάντων βιβλία τὴν ἐξουσίαν δούς ἐκάστῳ τῶν παρόντων ὃ βούλεται μόριον ἀνατμηθῆναι προβάλλειν, ἐπαγγειλάμενος δείξειν ὅσα διεφώνησαν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν, ἀληθῶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένα. προβληθέντος δὲ τοῦ θώρακος ἐμοῦ τε τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀπὸ τῶν παλαιοτάτων ποιουμένου προχειριζομένου τε τὰς βίβλους αὐτῶν, ἠξίωσάν τινας τῶν ἀξιολόγων ἰατρῶν ἐν προεδρία καθεζόμενοι μὴ κατατρίβειν με τὸν χρόνον, ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ Λύκος ὁ Μακεδῶν, Κοῦντου μαθητῆς γεγονῶς ἀνατο-

ἀληθῶς: truly

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open, dissect

ἀνατίθημι: to set up, set in place

ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy

ἀξίω: to think worthy, request (+ *inf.*)

βούλομαι: to will, wish

δείκνυμι: to display, exhibit

διαφωνέω: to be dissonant

ἐξουσία, ἡ: power, permission

ἐπαγγέλλω: to tell, proclaim, announce

ἔμπροσθεν: before

θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: a chest, thorax

καθεζόμεναι: to sit down, be seated

κατατρίβω: to spend time

Κοῦντος, ὁ: Quintus

Λύκος, ὁ: Lycus

μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil

Μακεδῶν: a Macedonian

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle

μόριον, τό: a piece, part

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years

πάρεμι: to be present

προβάλλω: to throw before, challenge

προεδρία, ἡ: the front seat

προχειρίζω: to handle

ἀνέθηκα: ao. of ἀνα-τίθημι, "I set in place"

δούς: ao. part. of δίδωμι, "having given permission"

ἀνατμηθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of ἀνα-τέμνω complementing βούλεται, "whatever part he wished to be dissected"

προβάλλειν: pr. inf. epex. with ἐξουσίαν, "permission to challenge"

ἐπαγγειλάμενος: ao. part., "having announced"

δείξειν: fut. inf. in ind. st. after ἐπαγγειλάμενος, "that I would show"

διεφώνησαν: ao. of δια-φωνέω, "how much they disagreed with" + dat.

γεγραμμένα: perf. part., "the things written by me"

προβληθέντος: ao. pas. part. in gen. abs., "the thorax having been chosen"

ἐμοῦ ... ποιουμένου: pr. part. in gen. abs., "me making the beginning"

παλαιοτάτων (sc. βιβλίων): "from the oldest (books)"

προχειριζομένου: also gen. abs. with ἐμοῦ, "me beginning to handle"

κατατρίβειν: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἠξίωσαν, "they asked me not to waste time"

ἐπειδὴ ... ἔγραψεν: "since Lycus had written"

γεγονῶς: perf. part., "having been the student"

μικωτάτου, τὰ μέχρι τῶν καθ' ἑαυτὸν εὑρημένα πάντ' ἔγραψεν, ἑάσαντα τοὺς ἄλλους μόνα τὰ πρὸς ἐκείνου γεγραμμένα τοῖς ἐμοῖς ἀντεξετάσαι: προσιέμενος οὖν αὐτῶν τὴν ἀξίωσιν οὕτως ἐπὶ πάντων τῶν καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν προβαλλομένων ἐποίησα. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα διὰ τοῦτ' ἠναγκάσθην εἰπεῖν, ὅπως ἴδωσιν οἱ μέλλοντες ἀναγνώσεσθαι τι τῶν ἐμῶν, κατὰ τίνα τὴν ἡλικίαν ἕκαστον ἔγραψα καὶ κατὰ τίνα τὴν αἰτίαν: ἐκ τούτων γὰρ εἴσονται τά τ' ἔλλιπῶς γεγραμμένα διορίζειν ἀπὸ τῶν τελέως ἐξεργασμένων τά τε κατὰ τὸν πρὸς τοὺς ἀλαζονευομένους ἔλεγχον

ἀλαζονεύομαι: to make false pretensions

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel

ἀντεξετάζω: to test by comparing

ἀξίωσις, -εως ἢ: a request

διορίζω: to distinguish

ἑάω: to allow, dismiss

εἶδον: to see

ἔλεγχος, ὅ: a reproach, refutation

ἔλλιπής, -ές: wanting, lacking, defective

ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine

ἐξεργάζομαι: to bring to perfection

εὕρισκω: to find

ἡλικία, ἡ: time of life

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

μέλλω: to intend to do (+ *inf.*)

μέχρι: up to (+ *gen.*)

προβάλλω: to challenge, demand

προσῆμι: to let come to, allow, agree

τελέως: completely

τὰ ... εὑρημένα: perf. part., "all *the things discovered*"

μέχρι τῶν: "up to *the ones* by himself (Lycus)"

ἑάσαντα: ao. part. acc. s. circumstantial, agreeing with **με** understood, "they asked that (I) *having dismissed* the others"

τὰ ... γεγραμμένα: perf. part., "the works *written* from the time of that one"

ἀντεξετάσαι: ao. inf. of ἀντι-ἐξετάζω, with **με** understood as subj. after ἠξιώσάν, "they asked *that I compare* only these *to*" + dat.

προσιέμενος: pr. part. of προσ-ἔημι, "agreeing to their request"

οὕτως ... ἐποίησα: ao., "thus I proceeded"

τῶν ... προβαλλομένων: "concerning *the things being demanded*"

ἠναγκάσθην: ao. pas., "I was compelled" + inf.

ὅπως ἴδωσιν: ao. subj. in purp. cl., "so that they would see"

ἀναγνώσεσθαι: fut. inf. complementing μέλλοντες, "those about to read"

κατὰ τίνα... ἔγραψα: ao. in ind. quest. after ἴδωσιν, "know *at what time I wrote*"

εἴσονται: fut. of οἶδα, "they will know" + inf.

ἐξεργασμένων: perf. part. gen., "from *those perfected*"

τά τε (sc. γεγραμμένα): "and (to distinguish) those written"

κατὰ τὸν ... ἔλεγχον: "for the refutation"

ἀλαζονευομένους: pr. part., "against those *making false pretensions*"

ἀπὸ τῶν διδασκαλιῶν. ἐπισημανοῦμαι δὲ ταῦτα καὶ διὰ τῶν ἐξῆς, εἴαν που γένηται χρεία: νυνὶ δὲ τὰ διασφύζομενα τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γραφέντων δηλώσω τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνατομικῶν ποιησάμενος.

### III. Περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν ἀνατομικὴν θεωρίαν.

Πρῶτον μὲν ἐν τούτοις τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ὈΣΤΩΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΕἰΣΑΓΟΜΕΝΟΙΣ γεγραμμένοι, μετὰ τοῦτο δ' ἔστιν ἄλλα τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις βιβλία, τὸ μὲν ἕτερον αὐτῶν φλεβῶν τε καὶ ἀρτηριῶν ἀνατομὴν περιέχον, τὸ δ' ἕτερον νεύρων: ἔστι δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐν συντόμῳ διδάσκον ἅπαντ' ἀκριβῶς, ὅσα κατὰ τὰς ἈΝΑΤΟΜΙΚΑΣ ἘΓΧΕΙΡΗΣΕΙΣ γέγραπται περὶ μυῶν. εἰ δέ τις βούλοιτο μετὰ τὴν

---

ἀκριβῆς, -ές: exact, accurate

ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

βούλομαι: to will, wish to (+ *inf.*)

γίγνομαι: to happen to be

δηλόω: to show, clarify

διασφύζω: preserve

διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction

εἰσάγω: to introduce

ἐγχείρησις, -εως, ἡ: a procedure

ἐξῆς: one after another, in order

ἐπισημαῖνω: to indicate in addition

νεῦρον, τό: a sinew, tendon

νυνί: now, at this moment

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

περιέχω: to encompass, to be about

σύντομος, -ον: short

φλέψ, ἡ: a vein

χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

---

ἐπισημανοῦμαι: fut., "I will indicate more"

διὰ τῶν ἐξῆς: "in what follows"

εἴαν που γένηται: ao. subj. in fut. more vivid protasis, "if there is any need"

τὰ διασφύζομενα: pr. part., "the surviving (examples)"

γραφέντων: ao. part. gen. pl., "of the things written"

ποιησάμενος: ao. part., "having made a beginning"

τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις: pr. part., "written for those being introduced" i.e. beginners

ἔστιν ἄλλα: "there were other books"

περιέχον: pr. part. n., "one (book) being about"

ἐν συντόμῳ: "in abridged form"

διδάσκον: pr. part., "another book teaching"

εἰ δέ τις βούλοιτο: pr. opt. in pr. gen. protasis, "if someone wishes to" + *inf.*

τῶν ὀστέων ἀνατομὴν ἐπὶ τὰς ἀνατομικὰς ἐγχειρήσεις εὐθέως ἔρχεσθαι, δυνατόν ἐστὶν αὐτῷ παρελθεῖν τὰς τῶν ἀγγείων τε καὶ νεύρων ἀνατομὰς, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τὴν τῶν μυῶν: ἅπαντα γὰρ τὰ τῆς ἀνατομῆς ἐν ταῖς ἐγχειρήσεσι γέγραπται. τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον ἐν αὐταῖς περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰς χεῖράς ἐστὶ μυῶν καὶ συνδέσμων, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰ σκέλη μυῶν καὶ συνδέσμων, τὸ δὲ τρίτον περὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς κώλοις νεύρων καὶ ἀγγείων, τὸ δὲ τέταρτον περὶ τε τῶν τὰς γνάθους καὶ τὰ χεῖλη κινούντων μυῶν καὶ τὴν κάτω γένυιν ἔτι τε τῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τράχηλον καὶ ὠμοπλάτας, τὸ δὲ πέμπτον περὶ τῶν τοῦ θώρακος μυῶν καὶ τῶν κατ' ἐπιγαστριον καὶ τῶν ψοῶν καὶ τῶν κατὰ ράχιν, τὸ δ' ἕκτον περὶ τῶν τῆς τροφῆς

---

ἀγγεῖον, τό: vessel  
 γένυς, -νος, ἡ: the under jaw  
 γνάθος, -ου, ἡ: a jaw  
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, possible + inf  
 ἐγχειρήσεις, -εως, ἡ: a procedure  
 ἐπιγαστριος, -ον: over the belly  
 ἔρχομαι: to come or go  
 εὐθέως: directly  
 θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: a chest  
 κεφαλὴ, ἡ: a head  
 κινέω: to set in motion, to move  
 κῶλον, τό: a limb

---

νεῦρον, τό: a sinew, tendon  
 παρέρχομαι: to go past  
 ράχισ, -ιος, ὁ: a spine  
 σκέλος, -εος, τό: a leg  
 σύνδεσμος, ὁ: a bond, ligament  
 τράχηλος, ὁ: a neck, throat  
 τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals  
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand  
 χεῖλος, -εος, τό: a lip  
 ψοῖαι, αἱ: the muscles of the loins  
 ὠμοπλάτη, ἡ: the shoulder-blade

---

εὐθέως ἔρχεσθαι: pr. inf. after βούλοιο, “to go straight”  
 παρελθεῖν: ao. inf. after δυνατόν, “possible to by pass”  
 ἐν ταῖς ἐγχειρήσεσι (sc. ἀνατομικαῖς): in the *Anatomical Procedures*  
 ἐν αὐταῖς: i.e., the ἐγχειρήσεσι  
 συνδέσμων: “muscles and ligaments”  
 ἐν τοῖς κώλοις: “in the limbs”  
 τῶν ... κινούντων μυῶν: “about the muscles that move”  
 ἔτι τε τῶν: “and also about those (muscles that move)”  
 κατ' ἐπιγαστριον: “around the belly”  
 τῶν κατὰ ράχιν: those along the spine”

ὀργάνων, ἅπερ ἐστὶν ἔντερα καὶ γαστήρ ἥπαρ τε καὶ σπλῆν  
καὶ νεφροὶ καὶ κύστις ὅσα τ' ἄλλα σὺν τούτοις: τὸ δ' ἔβδομον  
καὶ ὄγδοον τῶν πνευματικῶν μορίων ἀνατομὴν περιέχει, τὸ  
μὲν ἔβδομον τῶν κατὰ τὴν καρδίαν καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα καὶ τὰς  
ἀρτηρίας τεθνεώτος τε καὶ ζῶντος ἔτι τοῦ ζώου, τὸ δ' ὄγδοον  
τῶν καθ' ὄλον τὸν θώρακα: τὸ δ' ἕνατον ἐγκεφάλου τε καὶ  
νωτιαίου ἀνατομὴν ἔχει, τὸ δὲ δέκατον ὀφθαλμῶν καὶ γλώττης  
καὶ στομάχου καὶ τῶν τούτοις συνεχῶν, τὸ δ' ἐνδέκατον τῶν  
κατὰ τὸν λάρυγγα καὶ τὸ καλούμενον ὑοειδὲς ὄστοῦν καὶ τῶν  
συνεχῶν αὐτοῖς ἔτι τε τῶν εἰς αὐτὰ παραγινομένων νεύρων:

ἀρτηρία, ἥ: an artery  
γαστήρ, -έρος, ἥ: stomach, belly  
γλώττα, -ης, ἥ: a tongue  
ἐγκεφάλος. ὁ: brain  
ἔντερον, τό: an intestine, piece of gut  
ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal  
ἥπαρ, -ατος, τό: a liver  
θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: a chest  
καρδία, ἥ: a heart  
κύστις, -εως, ἥ: a bladder  
λάρυγξ, τό: a larynx  
μόριον, τό: a piece, part  
νεῦρον, τό: a sinew, nerve  
νεφρός, ὁ: a kidney

νωτιαῖος, -α, -ον: of the back or spine  
ὄστοῦν, τό: a bone  
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye  
ὄργανον, τό: an organ  
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire  
παραγίνομαι: to be near  
περιέχω: to embrace, contain  
πνευματικός, -ή, -όν: of breath  
πνεύμων. ὁ: a lung  
σπλήν, ὁ: a spleen  
στόμαχος, ὁ: a stomach  
συνεχής, -ές: holding together, connecting  
ὑοειδής, -ές: shaped like the letter Γ

ὅσα τ' ἄλλα: “and the other things”

τῶν (sc. μορίων) κατὰ τὴν καρδίαν, κτλ.: “of the parts of the heart, etc.”

τεθνεώτος: perf. part. of θνήσκω, “(from the dissection) of an animal both *dead* and *living*”

ὄλον: pred., “in the chest *as a whole*”

ὀφθαλμῶν (sc. ἀνατομῆν): “(the anatomy) of the eyes

τῶν τούτοις συνεχῶν: pr. part., “and of the parts connecting to these”

τῶν (sc. μορίων) κατὰ τὸν λάρυγγα: “of the (parts) below the larynx”

τὸ καλούμενον ὑοειδὲς ὄστοῦν: “the bone called ‘hyoid’ at the base of the tongue

παραγινομένων: pr. part., “and the *associated* sinews”

τὸ δὲ δωδέκατον ἀρτηριῶν καὶ φλεβῶν, τὸ δὲ τρισκαιδέκατον τῶν ἀπ' ἐγκεφάλου νεύρων, τὸ δὲ τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατον τῶν ἀπὸ νωτιαίου, τὸ δὲ πεντεκαιδέκατον τῶν γεννητικῶν μορίων.

ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery

γεννητικός, -ή, -όν: generative, productive

δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth

ἐγκεφαλος. ὁ: brain

μόριον, τό: a part

νωτιαίος, -α, -ον: of the back or spine

πεντεκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fifteenth

τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fourteenth

τρискаιδέκατος, -η, -ον: thirteenth

φλέψ, ἡ: a vein

ἀρτηριῶν (sc. ἀνατομῆν): “(the anatomy) of the arteries”

τῶν (sc. νεύρων) ἀπὸ νωτιαίου: “(of the sinews) of the spine”

### Participles: general principles

Participles fall into three broad classes of use, with many other distinctions:

1. Attributive participles modify a noun or pronoun like other adjectives. They can occur with an article in the attributive position or with no article:

τῶν παραγινομένων νεύρων: “of the associated sinews”; often used substantively,

περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ σώματι κεχυμένων: “about the things diffused in the body”

2. Circumstantial participles are added to a noun or pronoun to set forth some circumstance under which an action takes place. Although agreeing with a noun or pronoun, these participles actually qualify the verb in a sentence, indicating time, manner, means, cause, purpose, concession, condition or attendant circumstance. Circumstantial participles can occur in the genitive absolute construction (see p. 000).

καὶ εἰ πεισθεῖς αὐτοῖς ἀποδεικτικὸς γενέσθαι βουληθεῖη: “if someone, having been persuaded by these things, should wish to become expert in logic”

For more examples, see p. 000

3. Supplementary participles complete the idea of certain verbs. Often it is the participle itself that expresses the main action:

τις ἠλέγχθη προοίμιόν τι τεθεικώς: “someone was proved to have placed a preface”

εἷ που τύχοιεν ἐσφαλμένοι: “if someone happened to have been tripped up”

The participial form of indirect discourse after verbs of knowing and perceiving (see p. 000) is a special class of supplementary participles.

ἐπίστασαι δὲ καὶ σὺ τοὺς πολλοὺς ... ἡσκηκότας: “you know that many have practiced”

The aorist participle is very common and has no parallel in English in most cases. Our “translationese” versions of aorist participles will often sound like perfect participles (εὐρόντες: “having discovered”) because English has no way to indicate simple time with a participle. More idiomatic in these cases would be some kind of periphrasis, such as “once they discovered,” but our version will indicate the syntactic relations more clearly.

*Additional works on anatomy include commentaries on the work of Marinus*

τὰ μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαῖα τῆς ἀνατομικῆς θεωρίας ταῦτ' ἐστίν, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς ἀναγκαίοις ἄλλα χρήσιμα καὶ ταυτὶ γέγραπται: τῶν Μαρίνου βιβλίων ἀνατομικῶν εἴκοσιν ὄντων ἐν τέτταρσι ἡμετέροις ἐπιτομή, καθάπερ καὶ τῶν Λύκου πάντων ἐν δυοῖν: ὑπογράψω δ' αὐτῶν ἐκάστου τὰ κεφάλαια. κατὰ τὴν πρώτην ἐπιτομὴν τῶν τοῦ Μαρίνου βιβλίων ἀνατομικῶν ἕξ τὰ πρῶτα περιέχεται: γράφει δ' ἐν μὲν τῷ πρώτῳ τῶν ἕξ τὸ προοίμιον τῆς ὅλης θεωρίας, εἶτα περὶ δέρματος, εἶθ' ἕξῃς περὶ τριχῶν, εἶτα περὶ ὀνύχων καὶ σαρκῶν καὶ πιμελῆς καὶ στέατος: ἐν δὲ τῷ δευτέρῳ περὶ ἀδένων καὶ ὑμένων καὶ ὑμενωδῶν χιτώνων περιτοναίου τε καὶ ὑπεζωκότος καὶ διαφράγματος: ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ

ἀδὴν, -ένος, ἦ: gland

ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, essential

δέρμα, -ατος, τό: skin, hide

διάφραγμα, -ατος, τό: a partition-wall, diaphragm

εἴκοσι: twenty

ἕξῃς: one after another, in order, in a row

ἐπιτομή, ἦ: a summary, epitome

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

θεωρία, ἦ: contemplation, theory

θρίξ, τριχός, ἦ: hair

καθάπερ: just as

κεφάλαιος, -η, -ον: principal

Λύκος, ὁ: Lycus

Μαρίνος, ὁ: Marinus

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὄνυξ, -υχος, ὁ: talon

περιέχω: to encompass, contain

περιτόναιον, τό: the membrane stretched out over the lower viscera, peritoneum

πιμελή, ἦ: soft fat

προοίμιον, τό: an introduction

σάρξ, σαρκός, ἦ: flesh

στέαρ, -τος, τό: stiff fat

ὑμενώδης, -ες: membrane-like

ὑμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: thin skin, membrane

ὑπογράφω: to entitle

ὑποζώννυμι: to undergird

χιτών, -ώνος, ὁ: covering

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful, serviceable

τὰ ἀναγκαῖα (βιβλία): "the essential books"

ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς: "in addition to the essential ones"

Marinus: fl. 110 CE, a physician and teacher in Alexandria whom Galen credits with the revival of anatomy

ἐν τέτταρσι ἡμετέροις: "in our four (books)"

τῶν Λύκου: "of the (anatomical works) of Lycus"

ὑπογράψω: ao. subj. jussive, "let me list"

ἕξ τὰ πρῶτα: "his first six books are contained"

τῶν ἕξ: in the first of these six books"

ὑπεζωκότος: from the gen. s. perf. part. of ὑποζώννυμι, "the lining of the intestines"

περὶ τῶν λόγῳ θεωρητῶν ἀγγείων καὶ φλεβῶν καὶ ἀρτηριῶν ἀνατομῆς καὶ εἰ κατὰ φύσιν ἐν ἀρτηρίαις αἷμα περιέχεται: κατὰ δὲ τὸ τέταρτον, τίς ἐνέργεια ἀρτηριῶν καὶ τίς χρεῖα καὶ πόθεν ἄρχονται, καὶ τὰλλα ζητούμενα περὶ αὐτῶν, εἰθ' ἐξῆς περὶ οὐρητῆρων, περὶ οὐρητικῶν πόρων καὶ οὐράχου καὶ σπερματικῶν ἀγγείων καὶ χολωδῶν ἀγγείων καὶ πόρων καὶ ἀδένων καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀδένων ἀγγείου καὶ περὶ βρόγχου καὶ περὶ τῶν κατὰ τοὺς μασθοὺς ἀγγείων, ἐν οἷς τὸ γάλα, καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ σώματι κεχυμένων καὶ ἀγγείοις περιεχομένων καὶ τίν' ἐν τίσι περιέχεται τῶν ὑγρῶν καὶ τῶν κεχυμένων, καὶ περὶ τροφῆς: ἐν δὲ τῷ πέμπτῳ περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν κεφαλὴν, τῶν τ' ἄλλων καὶ τῶν ραφῶν καὶ μέντοι καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὸ πρόσωπον

---

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood  
 ἀγγεῖον, τό: vessel  
 ἀδὴν, -ένος, ἡ: gland  
 ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery  
 ἄρχω: to be first, begin  
 βρόγχος, ὁ: trachea, windpipe  
 γάλα, τό: milk  
 ἐνέργεια, ἡ: action, operation, energy  
 ἐξῆς: one after another, in order, in a row  
 ζητέω: to seek, seek for  
 θεωρητός, -ή, -όν: that may be seen  
 κεφαλὴ, ἡ: a head  
 μασθός, ὁ: a breast  
 οὐραχός, ὁ: urachus  
 οὐρητῆρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: (pl.) the ducts that convey urine to the bladder

---

οὐρητικός, -ή, -όν: pertaining to urine  
 περιέχω: to encompass, contain, surround  
 πόθεν: whence? from where?  
 πόρος, ὁ: a pore  
 πρόσωπον, τό: a face  
 ραφή, ἡ: a seam, suture  
 σπερματικός, -ή, -όν: seminal  
 τροφή, ἡ: nourishment  
 ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: wet, moist, running, fluid  
 φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein  
 φύσις, ἡ: nature  
 χέω: to pour  
 χολώδης, -ες: like bile or gall, bilious  
 χρεῖα, ἡ: use, advantage, use

---

λόγῳ θεωρητῶν: “about the vessels *seen through reason*”

εἰ ... περιέχεται: “and whether blood *is contained*”

εἰθ' ἐξῆς: “then in order”

οὐρητικῶν πόρων: the urethra

κεχυμένων: perf. part. of χέω, “of the things diffused” i.e., the liquids

περιεχομένων: pr. part., “of the things contained by” + dat.

τῶν τ' ἄλλων καὶ τῶν ραφῶν: “of other things and especially the sutures”



ῥαφῶν τε καὶ συμφύσεων καὶ πάντων τῶν τῆς κεφαλῆς ὀστέων  
καὶ περὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὴν τε καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον τρημάτων καὶ  
περὶ τῆς κάτω γνάθου καὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὴν τρημάτων καὶ εἰ ἔστι  
σύμφυτος ἑαυτῇ, περὶ τε τῶν ὀδόντων καὶ τοῦ προσκειμένου  
τῇ κεφαλῇ τοῦ βρόγχου ὀστοῦ καὶ τῶν συνεχῶν αὐτῷ τῶν  
κατὰ τὰ παρίσθια τεταμένων: ἐν δὲ τῷ ἔκτῳ περὶ τ' ὄσχεου  
γράφει καὶ ἱεροῦ ὀστοῦ καὶ ἰσχίου καὶ πλευροῦ καὶ στέρνων καὶ  
ὠμοπλατῶν καὶ ἀκρωμίων καὶ περὶ κλειδῶν καὶ βραχίονος καὶ  
πήχεως καὶ κερκίδος ὀστέων τε τοῦ καρποῦ καὶ τῶν δακτύλων  
καὶ περὶ μηροῦ καὶ τῶν ἐκατέρωθεν τοῦ γόνατος χονδρωδῶν  
ὀστέων.

---

ἀκρωμία, ἡ: point of the shoulder

βραχίων, ὁ: an arm

βρόγχος, ὁ: trachea, windpipe

γνάθος, ἡ: a jaw

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: a knee

δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger

ἐκατέρωθεν: on each side

ἱερός, -η, -ον: to sacred

ἰσχιον, τό: hip-joint

καρπός, ὁ: a wrist

κάτω: lower

κερκίς, -ίδος, ἡ: the radius of the arm

κεφαλή, ἡ: a head

κλείς, ἡ: collar bone

μηρός, ὁ: a thigh

ὀδούς, -όντος, ὁ: tooth

ὄσχεος, -ου, ὁ: scrotum

παρίσθιον, τό: tonsil

πήχυς, ὁ: a forearm

πλευρόν, τό: a rib

πρόσκειμαι: to be placed by

πρόσωπον, τό: a face

ῥαφή, ἡ: a seam, suture

στέρνον, τό: a chest

συνεχής, -ές: holding together

σύμφυσις, -εως, ἡ: growing together, natural  
junction

σύμφυτος, -ον: naturally joined

τείνω: to stretch

τρήμα, -ατος, τό: a perforation, hole

χονδρωδής, -ες: cartilaginous

ὠμοπλάτη, ἡ: shoulder-blade

---

τῶν κατ' αὐτὴν ... τρημάτων: “about the holes both in this (the head) and the face”

τῶν κατ' αὐτὴν τρημάτων: “about the holes in this (the jaw)”

εἰ ἔστι σύμφυτος: an ind. quest., “and whether it is naturally joined to itself”

τοῦ προσκειμένου ... ὀστοῦ: “of the bone adjacent to” + dat.

τῶν τεταμένων: perf. part. of *τείνω*, and *those stretched out* to the tonsils”

ὀστοῦ ἱεροῦ: “the sacred bone,” i.e. the *sacrum*, so called perhaps because of its use in  
sacrifices

ὀστέων τε: “and about the bones of the wrist”

τῶν ἐκατέρωθεν ... ὀστέων: “about the bones on either side of” + gen.

ἐν δὲ τῷ δευτέρῳ τῶν ἡμετέρων ὑπομνημάτων, ἐν οἷς ἡ τῆς ἀνατομικῆς Μαρίνου θεωρίας ἐστὶν ἐπιτομή, τὸ ἑβδομον καὶ ὄγδοον καὶ ἕνατον καὶ δέκατον περιέχεται τῶν Μαρίνου βιβλίων. κεφάλαια δὲ κατὰ μὲν τὸ ἑβδομόν ἐστι περὶ τῆς τοῦ κρανίου κοινωνίας πρὸς τε τὰς μήνιγγας καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ὑμένας, περὶ τε τῶν καθ' ὅλον τὸ πρόσωπον νεύρων, περὶ τε κροταφιδῶν μυῶν καὶ μασσητήρων καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τὰς γνάθους καὶ τὰ χεῖλη μυῶν ἀπὸ τῶν φατνίων, καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰς γνάθους μυῶν, εἶτα περὶ τῶν ἐντὸς τῆς κάτω γνάθου μυῶν, τῶν τε περὶ αὐτὴν χωρὶς, καὶ τῶν μυκτήρων καὶ τῶν περὶ τὰς ὑμενώδεις ἐκφύσεις καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν γλώτταν, εἶτα περὶ γλώττης καὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὴν μυῶν, ἔτι τε περὶ τῶν κατὰ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν μυῶν. ἐν δὲ τῷ ὄγδῳ τῶν τοῦ Μαρίνου βιβλίων κεφάλαια ταῦτ' ἐστί:

---

γλώττα, -ης, ἡ: a tongue

γνάθος, ἡ: a jaw

ἐκφυσις, -εως, ἡ: outgrowths

ἐντὸς: within, inside

ἐπιτομή, ἡ: an epitome

κάτω: lower

κεφάλαιος, -α, ον: of the head, main

κοινωνία, ἡ: association

κρανίον, τό: a skull

κροταφίτης, ὁ: temporal (muscle)

μασητήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: the lower jaw

μήνιγξ, -ιγγος, ἡ: membrane enclosing the brain

μυκτήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: a nose

νεῦρον, τό: a sinew, tendon

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye

περιέχω: to encompass, contain

πρόσωπον, τό: a face

ὑμενώδης, -ες: membranous

ὑμήν, -ένος, ὁ: membrane

φατνίον, τό: gum

χεῖλος, -εος: a lip

χωρὶς: separately, outside

---

κεφάλαια: "the main parts," i.e. chapters

καθ' ὅλον: "as a whole"

ἐπὶ τὰς ... χεῖλη, "muscles leading to the jaws and lips"

ἀπὸ τῶν φατνίων: "from the gums"

περὶ αὐτὴν: "around it (the jaw) on the outside"

καὶ τῶν (sc. μορίων) περὶ: "and of the (parts) around"

τῶν κατὰ τὴν γλώτταν: "those (outgrowths) along the tongue"

περὶ στόματος καὶ περὶ χειλῶν καὶ ὀδόντων καὶ οὐλῶν καὶ κίονος καὶ φαρυγγέθρου, ἐπιγλωττίδος τε καὶ παρισθμίων καὶ ἀντιάδων καὶ ῥίνος καὶ μυκτῆρων ὠτων τε καὶ τραχήλου καὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὸν μυῶν καὶ τῶν ὑπὸ τὴν πλευρὰν μυῶν, τῶν ὑπὸ τὴν κλείδα καὶ περὶ τραχήλου φύσεως. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐνάτῳ περὶ μυῶν τῶν κατὰ τε τὰς φρένας καὶ τὴν ῥάχιον καὶ τὰ μεσοπλεύρια καὶ τὸ ἐπιγάστριον, ἔτι τε περὶ τῶν τοῦ βραχίονος καὶ τῆς ὠμοπλάτης, πήχεως τε καὶ χειρὸς ἄκρας, ἐν δὲ τῷ δεκάτῳ περὶ τῆς κνήμης καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὴν μυῶν καὶ περὶ σκελῶν καὶ τῶν κατ' αὐτὰ μυῶν καὶ ἄρθρου τοῦ κατὰ γόνυ.

*The contents of Galen's third book on Marinus*

ἡ δὲ τρίτη τῶν ἐπιτομῶν τὸ ἐνδέκατόν τε καὶ δωδέκατον καὶ τρισκαιδέκατον καὶ τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατον καὶ πεντεκαιδέκατον τῶν τοῦ Μαρίνου βιβλίων ἐστίν. ἔγραψε δὲ Μαρίνος ἐν μὲν τῷ ἐνδεκάτῳ εἰ φέρεται τι ἀπὸ νώτων ὑγρὸν εἰς πνεύμονα κατὰ

ἄκρα, ἡ: a tip  
 ἀντιάς, -άδος, ἡ: tonsil  
 ἄρθρον, τό: a joint  
 βραχίων, ό: an arm  
 γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: a knee  
 δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth  
 ἐπιγάστριος, -ον: over the belly  
 ἐπιγλωττίς, -ίδος, ἡ: epiglottis  
 ἐπιτομή, ἡ: an epitome  
 κίων, -ονος, ό: a pillar, uvula  
 κλείς, -ιδος, ἡ: clavicle  
 κνήμη, ἡ: a shin  
 μεσοπλεύριος, -ον: between the ribs  
 μυκτῆρ, -ῆρος, ό: a nostril  
 νώτον, τό: a back  
 ὀδούς, -όντος, ό: a tooth  
 οὐλον, τό: the gums  
 οὖς, ὠτός, τό: ear

παρίσθμιον, τό: part of the throat  
 πεντεκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fifteenth  
 πήχης, ό: a forearm  
 πλευρά, ἡ: rib, side  
 πνεύμων, ό: a lung  
 ῥάχις, -ιος, ό: the lower part of the back  
 ῥίς, ῥίνος, ἡ: a nose  
 σκέλος, -εος, τό: a leg  
 στόμα, τό: a mouth  
 τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fourteenth  
 τράχηλος, ό: a neck, throat  
 ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: fluid  
 φαρυγγέθρον, τό: pharynx  
 φέρω: to bear  
 φρήν, -ενος, ό: midriff, diaphragm  
 χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand  
 χείλος, -εος: a lip  
 ὠμοπλάτη, ἡ: a shoulder-blade

εἰ φέρεται τι: a topic in the form of an ind. quest., “whether any fluid enters”

τε τὰς εἰσπνοὰς καὶ κατὰ τὰς ἔδωδὰς εἰς γαστέρα πνεύματα,  
 δεύτερον δὲ περὶ στομάχου καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν περὶ βρόγχου καὶ  
 περὶ πνεύμονος καὶ καρδίας καὶ περικαρδίου θυμοῦ: κατὰ δὲ  
 τὸ δωδέκατον τῆς ἑαυτοῦ πραγματείας ὁ Μαρῖνος ἔγραψε περὶ  
 ἥπατος καὶ τῆς ἐν αὐτῷ χολῆς καὶ περὶ σπληνὸς καὶ κοιλίας  
 καὶ μεσεντερίου: κατὰ δὲ τὸ τρισκαιδέκατον πρῶτον μὲν περὶ  
 ἐντέρων, εἶτα περὶ νεφρῶν καὶ οὐρητῆρος καὶ κύστεως καὶ  
 οὐράχου καὶ πόρου τοῦ οὐρητικοῦ, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα περὶ καυλοῦ  
 ἄρρενος καὶ αἰδοίου τοῦ ἄρρενος καὶ θηλείας καὶ περὶ μήτρας  
 καὶ τῶν κυουμένων καὶ περὶ τῶν ὄρχεων, οὓς διδύμους ὀνομάζει,  
 καὶ μετ' αὐτοὺς περὶ ἀδενοειδῶν: ἐν δὲ τῷ τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτῳ

αἰδοῖον, τό: genitals  
 ἀδενοειδής, -ές: glandular  
 ἄρσην, ἄρρενος, ὁ: male  
 βρόγχος, ὁ: trachea, windpipe  
 γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: a stomach, belly  
 διδυμος, -ος, -ον: double, twofold, twain  
 δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth  
 ἔδωδή, ἡ: food, meat, victuals  
 εἰσπνοή, ἡ: inhalation  
 ἔντερον, τό: an intestine  
 ἥπαρ, -ατος, τό: a liver  
 θήλυς, θηλεία, θήλυ: female  
 θυμός, ὁ: spirit  
 καρδία, ἡ: a heart  
 καυλός, ὁ: a shaft  
 κοιλία, ἡ: belly, bowels  
 κύνω: to bear in the womb  
 κύστις, -εως, ἡ: a bladder

μεσεντέριον, τό: membrane to which the  
 intestines are attached  
 μήτρα, ἡ: womb  
 νεφρός, ὁ: a kidney  
 οὐραχός, ὁ: urachus (a canal from the  
 bladder to the umbilical cord)  
 οὐρητήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: duct conveying urine to  
 the bladder  
 οὐρητικός, -ή, -όν: urinary  
 ὀνομάζω: to name  
 ὄρχις, -εως, ὁ: the testicles (*pl.*)  
 περικάρδιος, -ον: about or around the heart  
 πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: air  
 πνεύμων, ὁ: a lung  
 πόρος, ὁ: a duct  
 πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work  
 σπλήν, ὁ: a spleen  
 στόμαχος, ὁ: an opening, the stomach  
 τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fourteenth  
 χολή, ἡ: gall, bile

(εἰ) εἰς γαστέρα: “(whether) air enters *into the stomach*”

καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν: “and after this”

περικαρδίου θυμοῦ: “spirit around the heart,” the *thymos* is both a philosophical idea  
 and a kind of physical presence as well.

ἐν αὐτῷ: and the bile *in it*”

πόρου τοῦ οὐρητικοῦ: “the urinary duct” i.e. urethra

τῶν κυουμένων: pr. part., “of the parts that are conceived” i.e. the embryo

διδύμους: pred. acc., “which he calls *twins*”

περὶ ἀδενοειδῶν: “about the glandular parts”

τὴν ἀνατομὴν τῶν ἄνω τοῦ ἥπατος ἀπασῶν φλεβῶν ἐποίησατο:  
κατὰ δὲ τὸ πεντεκαίδεκατον περί τε τῆς ἀπὸ καρδίας ἐφ' ἥπαρ  
φερομένης φλεβὸς καὶ τῶν κάτω τοῦ διαφράγματος ἀπασῶν  
καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα περὶ τῶν καθ' ὅλον τὸ ζῶον ἀρτηριῶν.

*The fourth and final book on Marinus*

ἡ δὲ τετάρτη τῶν ἐπιτομῶν καταγίνεται περὶ τὰ λοιπὰ τοῦ  
Μαρίνου πέντε βιβλία μετὰ τὸ πεντεκαίδεκατον, τὸ ἑκκαίδεκα-  
τον ἄχρι τοῦ εἰκοστοῦ περιέχουσα. γέγραπται δ' ἐν τῷ ἑκκαί-  
δεκάτῳ τὰ περὶ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου ζητούμενα καὶ φαινόμενα, οἷον  
εἰ σφυγμῶδης ἐν αὐτῷ κίνησις καὶ εἰ ἀναπνέομεν εἰς αὐτόν, εἴθ'  
ἐξῆς περὶ νωτιαίου καὶ μνηίνγγων: ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑπτακαίδεκάτῳ περὶ

ἀναπνέω: to breathe again, take breath  
ἄνω: upwards  
ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery  
ἄχρι: up to (+ *gen.*)  
διάφραγμα, -ατος, τό: a partition,  
diaphragm  
ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain  
εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν: twentieth  
ἑκκαίδεκατος, -η, -ον: sixteenth  
ἐξῆς: one after another, in order  
ἐπιτομή, ἡ: a summary, epitome  
ἑπτακαίδεκατος, -η, -ον: seventeenth  
ζητέω: to seek  
ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal  
ἥπαρ, -ατος, τό: a liver

καρδία, ἡ: a heart  
καταγίνομαι: to be concerned with  
κάτω: down, downwards  
κίνησις, ἡ: movement, motion  
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest  
μνηνγγίξ, -ιγγος, ἡ: membrane enclosing the  
brain  
νωτιαίος, -α, -ον: of the back or spine  
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole  
πεντεκαίδεκατος, -η, -ον: fifteenth  
περιέχω: to encompass, embrace, surround  
σφυγμῶδης, -ες: pulse-like  
φαίνω: to bring to light, make to appear  
φέρω: to bear  
φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein

ἄνω τοῦ ἥπατος: “the veins *above the liver*”

τῆς ... φερομένης φλεβός: “about the vein bearing itself” i.e., “going”

τῶν κάτω τοῦ: “*the veins below the diaphragm*”

καθ' ὅλον τὸ ζῶον: “throughout the whole animal”

περιέχουσα: pr. part. agreeing with ἡ τετάρτη, “encompassing”

τὰ ζητούμενα καὶ φαινόμενα: pr. part. n. pl. acc., “the things sought about and things  
observed”

οἷον εἰ: “*such as whether* there is”

εἰ ἀναπνέομεν: “whether we breathe”

εἴθ' ἐξῆς: “then next in order”

κυριότητος ἐγκεφάλου τὸν λόγον ἐποίησατο: κατὰ δὲ τὸ ὄγδοον καὶ δέκατον περὶ τῶν κατὰ προαίρεσιν ἐνεργειῶν καὶ περὶ τῆς κατὰ μέρος διαφορᾶς τῶν νεύρων καὶ πόθεν τινὰ ἐκπέφυκεν αὐτῶν: ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐνάτῳ καὶ δεκάτῳ περὶ τῶν ἀπ' ἐγκεφάλου πεφυκότων νεύρων καὶ περὶ ὀσφρήσεως καὶ πόθεν ἄρχεται τὸ αἰσθητήριον αὐτῆς καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς νεύρων, ἃ καλοῦσιν Ἡρόφιλος τε καὶ Εὐδήμος πόρους, εἶτα [...]

---

The following summary of the Arabic translation is based on the translation by V. Boudon Millot (2002), 14-18:

Book 20 of Marinus discusses the nerve from the lower part of the brain.

A treatise by Lycus on anatomy in 19 books was abridged by Galen in two volumes.

*Volume 1* covered the first nine books of Lycus, discussing the brain, the nerves issuing from the brain, the eye, the head of the pharynx (?), the lung after death, the lung in life, the heart (?), the diaphragm.

---

αἰσθητήριον, τό: an organ of sense  
ἄρχω: to begin  
διαφορά, ἡ: difference, distinction  
ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain  
ἐκφύω: to generate from  
ἐνέργεια, ἡ: action, operation, energy  
κυριότης, -ητος, ἡ: dominion  
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

νεῦρον, τό: a nerve  
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye  
ὀσφρησις, -εως, ἡ: sense of smell  
πόθεν: whence?  
πόρος, ὁ: a duct  
προαίρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a choosing  
φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

---

τὸ ὄγδοον καὶ δέκατον: “the eighteenth”

κατὰ προαίρεσιν: “according to choice” i.e. voluntary

τῆς ... διαφορᾶς: “about the difference”

κατὰ μέρος: “part by part”

ἐκπέφυκεν: perf., “whence some of them *arose*”

πεφυκότων: perf. part., “the nerves *that have grown*”

πόθεν ἄρχεται: “whence arises”

Ἡρόφιλος τε καὶ Εὐδήμος: Herophilus of Chalcedon (335-280 BC), a famous anatomist. Eudemus, a less known contemporary of Herophilus.

πόρους: pred. acc., “they call *ducts*”

[...]: There is a substantial lacuna here which is able to be filled in by the newly discovered manuscripts. See the insert below.

## Galen

*Volume 2* covered books 10-19, covering the liver, the omentum and spleen, the kidney, the bladder and penis, the uterus, the dissection of the uterus containing a fetus, a living child, a dead child, the testicles and the muscles.

Other anatomical works by Galen listed in this section included:

Two books *On Controversies in Anatomy*

One book *On the Anatomy of dead Subjects*

Two books *On Vivisection*

Six books *On Anatomy in Hippocrates*

Three books *On Anatomy in Erisistratus*

A commentary in four books *On What Lycus did not Know About Anatomy*

Two books *On Differences with Lycus on Anatomy*

One book *On the Science of Anatomy*

The next section lists works that explained how dissection could contribute to an understanding of the faculties of various parts and their uses.

*On the Movement of Thorax and Lung*

Two books *On the Causes of Breathing*

Four books *On the Voice*

Two books *On the Movement of Muscles*

*On the Faculties of the Soul*

Three books *On the Natural Faculties*

One book *On the Usefulness of the Pulse*

One book *On the Usefulness of Breathing*

One book *Whether Blood is Contained Naturally in the Arteries*

One book *On the Properties of Purgatives*

One book dealing with *The faculties of the Rational Soul*

Ten books *On the Opinions of Hippocrates and Plato*

Seventeen books *On the Usefulness of the Parts of the Body*

The next section describes what must be observed before considering therapy:

*Elements according to Hippocrates, dealing with the four universal elements, hot, cold, wet, and dry; manifested in the bodies of animals as blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile.*

Three books *On Mixtures*

Eleven books *On the Properties of Simple Drugs*

One book *On the Best Constitution*

One book *On the Best State of the Body*

One book *On the Irregularities of an Unbalanced Temperament*

*The Greek text resumes at this point...*

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΝΟΣΗΜΑΤΩΝ ΔΙΑΦΟΡΑΣ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ  
ΣΥΜΠΤΩΜΑΤΩΝ: ἔπεται δὲ τῷ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΝΟΣΗΜΑΤΩΝ ΔΙΑΦΟΡΑΣ  
τὸ ΤΑΣ ΑἴΤΙΑΣ τούτων διδάσκον ἐν βιβλίον, τῷ δὲ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ  
ΤΩΝ ΣΥΜΠΤΩΜΑΤΩΝ ΔΙΑΦΟΡΑΣ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΣΥΜΠΤΩΜΑΣΙΝ  
ΑἴΤΙΩΝ τρία καὶ τούτοις τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΕΠΟΝΘΩΤΩΝ ΤΟΠΩΝ. τὸ  
δὲ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΝΟΣΟΙΣ ΚΑΙΡΩΝ ἐκ τῶν προηγουμένων τῆς  
θεραπευτικῆς πραγματείας ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΠΥΡΕΤΩΝ  
ΔΙΑΦΟΡΑΣ τό τε ΠΕΡΙ ΠΛΗΘΟΥΣ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑ ΦΥΣΙΝ  
ὝΟΓΚΩΝ ἔτι τε τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΡΟΚΑΤΑΡΚΤΙΚΩΝ ΑἴΤΙΩΝ καὶ πρὸς  
τούτοις τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΣΥΝΕΚΤΙΚΩΝ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΡΟΜΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΠΑΛ-  
ΜΟΥ ΚΑΙ ῬΙΓΟΥΣ ΚΑΙ ΣΠΑΣΜΟΥ καὶ τὸ ἐπιγεγραμμένον ΤΕΧΝΗ  
ἸΑΤΡΙΚΗ.

αἴτια, ἦ: cause

διαφορά, ἦ: difference, distinction

ἐπιγράψω: to engrave, entitle

ἔπομαι: to follow

θεραπευτικός, -ή, -όν: therapeutic

καιρός, ό: critical moment

νόσημα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease, plague

νόσος, ἦ: sickness, disease, malady

ὄγκος, -ον: a mass

παλμός, ό: quivering motion

πάσχω: to suffer, be affected

πλήθος, -εος, τό: a mass

πραγματεία, ἦ: a major work

προηγέομαι: to precede logically

προκαταρκτικός, -ή, -όν: initial

πυρετός, ό: burning fever

ῥίγος, -εος, τό: shiver

σπασμός, ό: a convulsion, spasm

συνεκτικός, -ή, -όν: continuous

σύμπτωμα, -ατος, τό: a symptom

τόπος, ό: a place

τρόμος, ό: a trembling, quaking, quivering

φύσις, ἦ: nature

καὶ τὸ (sc. βιβλίον) περὶ τῆς (sc. διαφορᾶς): and *the (book) about the (difference)*  
among symptoms”

τῷ (sc. βιβλίῳ): dat. after ἔπεται, “one book follows *the (book)* on”

διδάσκον: pr. part. with βιβλίον, “one book *teaching*”

καὶ τούτοις: also dat. after ἔπεται, “and the books about places follow *these*, “

πεπονθῶτων: perf. part. of πάσχω, “places *that are affected*”

ἐκ τῶν προηγουμένων: pr. part. of προ-ηγέομαι, “is *from those preceding logically*” +  
gen.

παρὰ φύσιν: “contrary to nature”

τὸ ἐπιγεγραμμένον: perf. part., “the book *entitled*”



## IV. Τὰ θεραπευτικά.

Τεσσαρεσκαίδεκά εἰσι Μεθοδοῦ Θεραπευτικῆς δύο τε τῶν πρὸς Γλαύκωνα Θεραπευτικῶν καὶ τρία περὶ Φλεβοτομίας, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον πρὸς Ἐρασίστρατον, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον πρὸς τοὺς ἐν Ῥώμῃ Ἐρασιστρατεῖους, τρίτον δ' ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ἄλλο κατὰ τὴν ἡμετέραν γνώμην συγκείμενον θεραπευτικόν: ἔστι δὲ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΜΑΡΑΣΜΟΥ τῶν θεραπευτικῶν. ἐδόθη δέ τι φιλῶν βιβλίδιον μικρόν, οὗ νῦν εἰς πολλοὺς ἐκπεσόντος, ἔλαβον ἀντίγραφον ἔχον ἐπιγραφὴν ὙΠΟΘΗΚΗ ΠΑΙΔΙΩ ἘΠΙΛΗΠΤΩ, τῆς θεραπευτικῆς πραγματείας. θείη δ' ἂν τις αὐτῆς καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΤΡΟΦΑΙΣ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΝ τρία καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ

---

ἀντίγραφος, -ον: copied

βιβλίδιον, τό: a small book

γνώμη, ἡ: knowledge

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, property

ἐκπίπτω: to fall into

ἐπιληπτός, -ον: epileptic

Ἐρασιστρατεῖους: followers of Erasistratus

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

μαρασμός, ό: withering

μέθοδος, ἡ: a method

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little

παῖδιον, τό: little or young child

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

Ῥώμη, ἡ: Rome

σύγκεμαι: to be composed

τεσσαρεσκαίδεκα, οἱ: fourteen

τίθημι: to set, put, place

τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals

ὑποθήκη, ἡ: a counsel, advice

φλεβοτομία, ἡ: blood-letting

---

Τεσσαρεσκαίδεκά (sc. βιβλία): “there are *fourteen* books”

μεθόδου θεραπευτικῆς: with *περὶ* understood, “about therapeutic method”

δύο τε: “and two (books)”

πρὸς Γλαύκωνα: “addressed to Glaucon”

Ἐρασίστρατον: Erasistratus of Cos (fl. 250 BCE)

ἐπ' αὐτοῖς: “third *among these*”

συγκείμενον: perf. part. used as passive of *συν-τίθημι*, “having been composed”

ἐδόθη: ao. pas., “small book *was given to*” + dat.

οὗ ... ἐκπεσόντος: ao. part. in gen. abs., “*which, having fallen into* the hands of many”

ἔλαβον: ao., “I received”

ἔχον: pr. part., “a copy *having* the title”

πραγματείας: gen. abs., “(being) a therapeutic work”

θείη: ao. opt. pot., “one might place”

αὐτῆς: “here”

τὰ ... τρία: “the three (books)”

ΛΕΠΤΥΝΟΥΣΗΣ ΔΙΑΙΤΗΣ καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΕΥΧΥΜΙΑΣ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΚΟΧΥΜΙΑΣ. οὐδὲν δ' ἦττον τῶν προειρημένων τῆς θεραπευτικῆς πραγματείας εἶη ἂν καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΡΑΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΟΥ ΘΕΡΑΠΕΥΤΙΚΩΝ ΛΟΓΙΣΜΩΝ. τὸ δὲ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἸΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ΔΙΑΙΤΗΣ ΕΠΙ ΤΩΝ ὍΣΕΩΝ ΝΟΣΗΜΑΤΩΝ ταχθείη μὲν ἂν καὶ μετὰ τούτων, ταχθείη δ' ἂν καὶ μετὰ τῶν εἰς τὰ Ἰπποκράτους γεγονότων ὑπομνημάτων, ἐν οἷς πάμπολλα περιέχεται θεραπευτικὰ θεωρήματα, καθάπερ γε καὶ διαγνωστικὰ καὶ προγνωστικά.

V. Ποῖα τῆς προγνωστικῆς θεωρίας βιβλία.

Πρῶτα μὲν ἐστὶ τρία ΠΕΡΙ ΚΡΙΣΙΜΩΝ ἩΜΕΡΩΝ, δεύτερον δ' ἐπ' αὐτοῖς τρία ΠΕΡΙ ΚΡΙΣΕΩΝ, εἴθ' ἢ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΣΦΥΓΜΩΝ πραγματεία, καθ' ἣν πρῶτα μὲν ἐστὶ τέτταρα ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΔΙΑΦΟΡΑΣ αὐτῶν, δεύτερον δ' ἄλλα τοσαῦτα ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΔΙΑΓΝΩΣΕΩΣ, καὶ τρίτον πρὸς αὐτοῖς ἴσα τὸν ἀριθμὸν ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΑΥΤΟΙΣ ΑΙΤΙΩΝ

---

αἶτιον, τό: a cause  
ἀριθμός, ό: a number  
διαγνωστικός, -ή, -όν: diagnostic  
διαφορά, ή: difference, distinction  
διάγνωσις, -εως, ή: a diagnosis  
δίαιτα, ή: a regimen, a diet  
εὐχυμία, ή: good humor  
ἡμέρα, ή: a day  
ἦττων, ἦττον: less  
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as  
κακοχυμία, ή: bad humor  
κρίσιμος, -η, -ον: decisive, critical

κρίσις, ή: a crisis  
λεπτύνω: to make small  
λογισμός, ό: a reasoning  
ὄξυς, -εἰα, -ύ: sharp, keen  
περιέχω: to encompass, embrace, surround  
πραγματεία, ή: a major work  
προγνωστικός, -ή, -όν: prognostic  
προλεγω: to say beforehand  
σφυγμός, ό: a pulse  
τάττω: to arrange, put in order  
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so large, so tall

---

τῶν προειρημένων: perf. part. of *προ-λέγω* in gen. of comp., "no less than these mentioned"

εἶη ἂν: pr. opt. pot., "would be"

ταχθείη ἂν (*bis*): ao. opt. pas. of *τάττω*, pot., "could be arranged"

μετὰ τῶν ... ὑπομνημάτων: "or among the commentaries"

γεγονότων: perf. part. attributive, "the commentaries that were made"

καθ' ἣν πρῶτα: "among whom the first"

περὶ τῆς διαφορᾶς αὐτῶν: , "about the distinction of them (i.e. pulses)"

ἄλλα τοσαῦτα: "the same number of others" i.e., four books

τὸν ἀριθμὸν: acc. of specification, "equal in number"

καὶ τέταρτον ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΔΙ' ΑΥΤΩΝ ΠΡΟΓΝΩΣΕΩΣ τέτταρα, ἑκκαίδεκα τὰ πάντα, καὶ χωρὶς αὐτῶν τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΣΦΥΓΜΩΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΕΙΣΑΓΟΜΕΝΟΙΣ γεγραμμένον. ἐν ᾧ τινες ἐζήτησαν, διὰ τί τῶν πυρεπτόντων ὁ ἴδιος οὐκ εἴρηται σφυγμός: οἷς ἀπεκρινάμεθα μείζον ἢ κατὰ τοὺς εἰσαγομένους εἶναι τὸ σκέμμα μεγάλης ζητήσεως τετευχός. ἀλλὰ τό γε τοσοῦτον εἴρηται κατὰ τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ βιβλίου τούτου, δύο δόξας γεγονέναι τοῖς ἰατροῖς, τὴν μὲν ἑτέραν τῶν ἡγουμένων αἰσθάνεσθαι καὶ τῆς συστολῆς τῶν ἀρτηριῶν, τὴν δὲ δευτέραν τῶν ἀναίσθητον αὐτὴν εἶναι

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive  
 ἀναίσθητος, -ον: imperceptible  
 ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer  
 ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery  
 δόξα, ἡ: a notion, opinion  
 εἰσάγω: to introduce  
 ἑκκαίδεκα: sixteen  
 ζητέω: to seek, seek for  
 ζήτησις, -εως, ἡ: a seeking

ἡγέομαι: to consider, think  
 πρόγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: a prognosis  
 πυρέττω: to be ill of a fever  
 σκέμμα, -ατος, τό: a question  
 συστολή, ἡ: a contraction (i.e. the systolic)  
 σφυγμός, ὁ: a pulse  
 τεύχω: to make, to consist of  
 χρεία, ἡ: use  
 χωρίς: apart from (+ gen.)

ἑκκαίδεκα τὰ πάντα: "16 (books) altogether"

χωρὶς αὐτῶν: "apart from these," i.e. in addition

τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις: dat., "for beginners"

ἐν ᾧ: "in which book" i.e. the last one for beginners

διὰ τί ... οὐκ εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω in ind. quest. after ἐζήτησαν, "some asked *why* a pulse was not mentioned"

τῶν πυρεπτόντων: pr. part. gen. after ἴδιος, "specific to those with a fever"

μείζον ἢ: "the topic was greater than"

εἶναι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἀπεκρινάμεθα, "I answered that the topic was"

τετευχός: perf. part. n. s. of τεύχω agreeing with σκέμμα, "consisting of" + gen.

τό γε τοσοῦτον: but so much at least"

εἴρηται: perf., "has been said"

γεγονέναι: perf. inf. in ind. st. after εἴρηται, "that there are two opinions"

αἰσθάνεσθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἡγουμένων, "those thinking that they perceive" + gen.

αὐτὴν εἶναι: ind. st. after λεγόντων, "those saying that it is imperceptible"

λεγόντων, ἡξιούμεν τε τὸν εἰσαγόμενον ἐπὶ τῆς ῥάονος πρότερον γυμνάσασθαι, καθ' ἣν ἀναίσθητος ἢ συστολή γίνεται. κατὰ ταύτην δὲ τὴν αἴρεσιν ἡμεῖς ἐπεπέισμεθα πυρετοῦ σημείου ἴδιον ἐν σφυγμοῖς οὐδὲν εἶναι, κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἑτέραν, ἣν ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ πραγματεία τῶν ἑκκαίδεκα βιβλίων ἔγραψα, λέλεκται τὸ σημεῖον. ἀλλ' οἱ μὴ μαθόντες παρὰ διδασκάλους, ἑοικότες δὲ κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν τοῖς ἐκ βιβλίου κυβερνήταις τοιαῦτα ζητοῦσιν. ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ κατ' ἀρχὰς εἴρηται τὴν μὲν τῶν εἰσαγομένων διδασκαλίαν ἑτέραν εἶναι, τὴν δὲ τῶν ἐκδιδασκομένων ἅπαντα τελέως ἑτέραν. γέγονε δ' οὖν μοι καὶ ἄλλο τι βιβλίον

ἀναίσθητος, -ον: imperceptible  
 ἀξιώω: to think worthy of  
 ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning  
 γυμνάζω: to train, exercise  
 διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction  
 διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master  
 εἰσάγω: to introduce  
 ἐκδιδάσκω: to teach thoroughly  
 ἑκκαίδεκα: sixteen  
 ἑοικα: it seemed good  
 ζητέω: to seek

κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman, pilot  
 παροιμία, ἡ: common saying, proverb, maxim  
 πείθω: to prevail upon, win over, persuade  
 πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work  
 πυρετός, ὁ: a fever  
 ῥάων, -ον: easier  
 σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark, token  
 συστολή, ἡ: a contraction  
 σφυγμός, ὁ: a pulse  
 τελέως: completely

ἡξιούμεν: impf. of ἀξιώω, “we deemed it worthy that X (acc.) do Y (inf.)”  
 ἐπὶ τῆς ῥάονος: “on the easier (opinion)”  
 γυμνάσασθαι: ao. inf., “that he practice”  
 ἐπεπέισμεθα: plupf. pas. of πείθω, “we had been persuaded”  
 οὐδὲν εἶναι: ind. st. after ἐπεπέισμεθα, “that there is no specific sign”  
 κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἑτέραν (sc. αἴρεσιν): “according to the second (choice)”  
 λέλεκται: perf. of λέγω, “the sign has been discussed”  
 οἱ μὴ μαθόντες: ao. part., μὴ gives the phrase a conditional sense, “if they have not learned”  
 ἑοικότες: part., “being like” + dat.  
 κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν: “according to the proverb”  
 ἐκ βιβλίου: “navigates from a book,” rather than from a teacher  
 ἐμοὶ: dat. of agent with εἴρηται, “it was said by me”  
 ἑτέραν: pred. after εἶναι, “that instruction of beginners is one (of two) things”  
 τὴν δὲ (sc. διδασκαλίαν εἶναι): “but that (instruction is)”  
 ἅπαντα: acc. of resp., “in all ways the other (of two things)”  
 γέγονε: perf., “another book came from” + dat.

ἐν, ἐν ᾧ τὴν σύνοψιν ἐποησάμην τῶν ἐκκαίδεκα βιβλίων. ἔξω-  
θεν δὲ τούτων ἀπάντων ἐστὶν ὀκτὼ βιβλία τῆς Ἀρχιγένους  
περὶ σφυγμῶν πραγματείας ἐξήγησίν τε καὶ χρήσιν ἔχοντα. ἐκ  
τούτου τοῦ μέρους τῆς τέχνης θεΐη ἂν τις καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΔΥΣΠΝΟΙ-  
ΑΣ τρία.

## VI. Περὶ τῶν Ἱπποκρατείων ὑπομνημάτων.

Οὐτ' ἄλλο τι τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ δοθέντων φίλοις ἤλπισα πολ-  
λοὺς ἔξειν οὔτε τὰ τῶν Ἱπποκρατείων συγγραμμάτων ἐξηγη-  
τικά: τὴν ἀρχὴν γὰρ οὐδὲν πρὸς ἔκδοσιν ἀλλ' ἐμαυτὸν γυμνάζω  
ἐγεγράφειν εἰς αὐτὰ ποθ' ὑπομνήματα, καθάπερ ἐποίησα

Ἀρχιγένης, ὁ: Archigenes

γυμνάζω: to train, exercise

δύσπνοια, ἡ: difficulty of breathing

ἔκδοσις, -εως, ἡ: an edition

ἐκκαίδεκα: sixteen

ἐλπίζω: to hope for, look for, expect

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

ἐξηγητικός, -ή, -όν: of or for interpretation

ἔξωθεν: outside of, apart from (+ *gen.*)

Ἱπποκράτειος, -α, -ον: Hippocratic

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view, synopsis

σφυγμός, ὁ: a pulse

τίθημι: to set, put, place

ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό: a note

χρήσις, -εως, ἡ: use, advantage

ἐποησάμην: ao. mid., “I made a synopsis”

ἔξωθεν δὲ τούτων: , “in addition to these”

Ἀρχιγένους: Archigenes, a physician in Rome a generation earlier than Galen

ἔχοντα: pr. part. n. pl. with βιβλία, “eight books *having* explanation and use”

θεΐη ἂν: ao. opt. pot. of τίθημι, “one might put also”

Ἱπποκρατείων ὑπομνημάτων: referring to the corpus of works surviving under the semi-mythical name of Hippocrates of Cos (5th C).

οὐτ' ἄλλο ... οὔτε τὰ: acc. of resp. neither with any other ... nor with the Hippocratic commentaries”

δοθέντων: ao. pas. part. of δίδωμι, “of those books *given* by me”

ἤλπισα: ao., “I expected” + fut. inf.

πολλοὺς ἔξειν: fut. inf. of ἔχω after ἤλπισα, “I expected *many to have*”

τὴν ἀρχὴν: acc. resp., “in terms of their origin”

οὐδὲν: adv., “not at all”

πρὸς ἔκδοσιν: “for (formal) publication”

ἐγεγράφειν: plupf. 1 s., “I had written”

ἐποίησα: ao., “I made (writing notes)”

τῆς ἰατρικῆς θεωρίας ἀπάσης καθ' ἕκαστον μέρος ἑμαυτῶ  
 παρασκευάσας οἷς ἅπαντα τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἰατρικὴν τέχνην ὑφ'  
 Ἴπποκράτους εἰρημένα περιέχεται διδασκαλίαν ἔχοντα σαφῆ θ'  
 ἅμα καὶ παντοίως ἐξεργασμένην: ἰδία μὲν γὰρ περὶ κρισίμων  
 ἡμερῶν ἔγραψα κατὰ τὴν Ἴπποκράτους γνώμην, ἰδία δὲ περὶ  
 κρίσεων, ἰδία δὲ περὶ δυσπνοίας ἐκάστου τε τῶν ἄλλων ὄλην  
 τε τὴν θεραπευτικὴν μέθοδον ὡσαύτως ἐν τέσσαρσι καὶ δέκα  
 βιβλίοις ἐποίησάμην. ἐξηγήσεις δὲ καθ' ἑκάστην αὐτοῦ λέξιν  
 ἤδη πολλοῖς τῶν πρὸ ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένας οὐ φαύλως εἰδώς, εἴ  
 τι μοι μὴ καλῶς ἐδόκουν εἰρηκέναι, περιττὸν ἡγούμην ἐλέγχειν:

γνώμη, ἡ: a knowledge  
 διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction  
 δύσπνοια, ἡ: difficulty of breathing  
 ἐλέγχο: to refute  
 ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out completely  
 ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation  
 ἡγέομαι: to consider  
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day  
 κρίσιμος, -η, -ον: decisive, critical  
 κρίσις, ἡ: a turning point (in a disease)

λέξις, -εως, ἡ: a speaking, word  
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire  
 παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds  
 παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare  
 περιέχω: to encompass, embrace, surround  
 περιττός, -ή, -όν: superfluous  
 σαφής, -ές: clear, plain, distinct, manifest  
 φαύλος, -η, -ον: easy, slight  
 ὡσαύτως: in like manner, just so

τῆς ἰατρικῆς θεωρίας ἀπάσης: “of the whole medical science”  
 καθ' ἕκαστον μέρος: “part by part”  
 παρασκευάσας: ao. part. instr., “by having prepared for myself (writing notes)”  
 οἷς: dat. rel. pron., “with which (writing notes)”  
 ἅπαντα τὰ ... εἰρημένα: “everything said by H. is encompassed”  
 ἔχοντα: pr. part. n. pl., “everything said including elucidation”  
 σαφῆ: acc. s. f. pred. agreeing with διδασκαλίαν, “elucidation that is clear”  
 ἐξεργασμένην: perf. part. of ἐξεργάζω, “and fully worked out”  
 ἰδία μὲν ... ἰδία δὲ: adv., “separately” or “specifically”  
 ἐκάστου τε τῶν ἄλλων: “and about each of the other things (in medicine)”  
 ἐποίησάμην: ao. mid., “I covered the whole method”  
 ἐξηγήσεις ... γεγραμμένας: perf. part. acc. pl. after εἰδώς: “knowing that explanations  
 had been written”  
 πολλοῖς: dat. of agent with γεγραμμένας, “by many of those before me”  
 καθ' ἑκάστην αὐτοῦ λέξιν: “according to each word,” i.e. word by word commentary  
 οὐ φαύλως: “knowing them not badly,” i.e. pretty well  
 εἰρηκέναι: perf. inf. after ἐδόκουν, “if they seemed to have said”  
 ἐλέγχειν: expegetic inf. after περιττὸν, “superfluous to refute”

ἐνδειξάμην δὲ τοῦτο δι' ὧν πρόην ἔδωκα τοῖς παρακάλεσσι, σπανιάκισ ἐν αὐτοῖς εἰπών τι πρὸς τοὺς ἐξηγουμένους αὐτούς. τὴν ἀρχὴν γὰρ οὐδ' εἶχον αὐτῶν ἐν Ῥώμῃ τὰ ὑπομνήματα, πάντων ὧν ἐκεκτήμην βιβλίων ἐν Ἀσίᾳ μεινάντων· εἴ που τοῖνυν ἐμεμνήμην ὑπὸ τινος αὐτῶν πάνυ τι μοχθηρῶς εἰρημένον, ὡς μεγάλως βλάπτεσθαι περὶ τὰ τῆς τέχνης ἔργα τοὺς πιστεύσαντας αὐτοῖς, ἐπεσημηνάμην τοῦτο, τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα κατὰ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ γνώμην εἶπον ἄνευ τοῦ μνημονεῦσαι τῶν ἄλλως

**ἄλλως:** in another way or manner

**ἄνευ:** without (+ *gen.*)

**Ἀσία, ἡ:** Asia

**βλάπτω:** to hinder, mislead

**γνώμη, ἡ:** a knowledge

**εἶπον:** to speak, say

**ἐμαυτοῦ:** of me, of myself

**ἐνδείκνυμι:** to mark, point out

**ἐξηγέομαι:** to explain

**ἐπισημαίνω:** to make a note, signal

**κτάομαι:** to acquire

**μεγάλως:** (*adv.*) greatly

**μένω:** to remain

**μνησκόμαι:** to remember

**μνημονεύω:** to note

**μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν:** wretched

**παρακαλέω:** to call to, request

**πάνυ:** altogether, entirely

**πιστεύω:** to trust (+ *dat.*)

**πρόην:** *adv.* earlier

**Ῥώμη, ἡ:** Rome

**σπανιάκισ:** (*adv.*) seldom

**τοῖνυν:** therefore, accordingly

**ἐνδειξάμην:** *ao.* of ἐν-δείκνυμι, “I indicated”

**τοῦτο:** “this” i.e. whatever (τι) had not been said well

**δι' ὧν:** “through (the books) which,” the pron. is attracted into the case of the antecedent.

**τοῖς παρακάλεσσι:** *ao.* part. *dat.* pl. ind. obj., “to those who had asked”

**εἰπών:** *ao.* part., “having said”

**τοὺς ἐξηγουμένους:** *pr.* part., “about those commenting”

**τὴν ἀρχὴν:** *acc.* of resp., “in the first place”

**πάντων ... μεινάντων:** *ao.* part. in gen abs., “all the books having remained”

**ὧν ἐκεκτήμην:** *plupf.*, “all which I had acquired”

**ἐμεμνήμην:** *plupf.* of μνησέομαι, “if I remembered”

**τι εἰρημένον:** *perf.* part. obj. of ἐμεμνήμην, “if I remembered anything that was said”

**ὡς βλάπτεσθαι:** *pr.* inf. in res. cl, “so that they would be misled”

**τοὺς πιστεύσαντας:** *ao.* part. subj. of βλάπτεσθαι, “those who believed”

**αὐτοῖς:** *dat.* after πιστεύσαντας, “believed them” i.e. the commentators on

Hippocrates

**ἐπεσημηνάμην:** *ao.* of ἐπι-σημαίνω, “I made a note of it”

**τοῦ μνημονεῦσαι:** *ao.* inf. art. *gen.* after ἄνευ, “without having noted” + *gen.*

ἐξηγουμένων: καὶ τὰ γ' Εἰς τοὺς Ἀφορισμοὺς Ὑπομνήματα καὶ τὸ Περὶ Ἄγμων καὶ τὸ Περὶ Ἄρθρων ἔτι τε τὸ Προγνωστικὸν καὶ τὸ Περὶ Διαίτης Ὁσίων τό τε Περὶ Ἐλκῶν καὶ τῶν ἐν Κεφαλῇ Τρωμάτων τό τε πρῶτον τῶν Ἐπιδημιῶν οὕτως ἐγράφη.

*After encountering an incorrect interpretation of a Hippocratic aphorism, Galen determines to compose his commentaries on Hippocrates for general publication*

μετὰ ταῦτα δέ τις ἀκούσας ἐξήγησιν ἀφορισμοῦ μοχθηρὰν ἐπαινοῦντος, ὅσα τοῦ λοιποῦ τισιν ἔδωκα, πρὸς κοινὴν ἔκδοσιν ἀποβλέπων, οὐκ ἰδίαν ἔξιν ἐκείνων μόνων τῶν λαβόντων, οὕτως συνέθηκα: ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν Ἐπιδημιῶν μὲν τὰ εἰς τὸ δεύτερον

---

ἄγμος, ὄ: a fracture

ἀποβλέπω: to look away from, to look at

ἄρθρον, τό: a joint

ἀφορισμός, ὄ: an aphorism

δίαιτα, ἡ: a regimen

ἔκδοσις, -εως, ἡ: an edition

ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound

ἐξηγέομαι: to explain

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

ἔξις, -εως, ἡ: a possession

ἐπαινώ: to approve, applaud, praise

ἐπιδήμιος, -ον: epidemic

κεφαλή, ἡ: a head

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared in common

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν: miserable, wretched

ὀξύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sharp, keen

προγνωστικός, -ή, -όν: prognostic

συντίθημι: to put together

τραῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wound, hurt

---

καὶ (sc. τὰ ὑπομνήματα εἰς) τὸ περὶ...: “and (the commentary on) the *About Fractures*”

ὀξέων: “on the regimen of acute (diseases)”

τό τε πρῶτον τῶν ἐπιδημιῶν: “the first (book) of *Epidemics*”

ἐγράφη: ao. pas. with collective n. subj., “all these were written in this way”

ἀκούσας: ao. part., “having heard” + gen.

ἐπαινοῦντος: pr. part. gen. agreeing with *τινος*, “someone praising”

τοῦ λοιποῦ: gen. of time indicating the time since an action took place, “for the remaining time (since then)” i.e. from then on

ἔδωκα: ao., “whatever I gave”

κοινὴν ἔκδοσιν: “eyeing a public edition”

οὐκ (sc. πρὸς) ἰδίαν ἔξιν: “not just for individual possession”

λαβόντων: ao. part. gen. pl., “of those who received”

συνέθηκα: ao. of *συντίθημι*, I composed”

ἐπιδημιῶν: gen. pl., “the 2nd, 3rd and sixth books of *The Epidemics*”



καὶ τρίτον καὶ ἕκτον ὑπομνήματα γεγραμμένα, πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ τοῦ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΥΜΩΝ καὶ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΡΟΦΗΣ καὶ ΠΡΟΡΡΗΤΙΚΟΥ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΕ ΦΥΣΙΟΣ ἈΝΘΡΩΠΟΥ καὶ τοῦ ΚΑΤ' ἸΗΤΡΕΙΟΝ, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τοῦ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΠΩΝ, ἈΕΡΩΝ, ὕδατων, ὃ ἐγὼ περὶ οἰκήσεων καὶ ὑδάτων καὶ ὠρῶν καὶ χωρῶν ἐπιγεγράφθαι φημὶ δεῖν. ἔστι δὲ τὰ μὲν εἰς τοὺς Ἀφορισμοὺς ἑπτὰ, τὰ δ' εἰς τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ἈΓΜΩΝ τρία, τὰ δ' εἰς τὰ περὶ ἄρθρων τέτταρα, τὰ δ' εἰς τὸ Προγνωστικὸν τρία, τὰ δ' εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΔΙΑΙΤΗΣ Ὁσέων, τρία μὲν εἰς τὸ γνήσιον αὐτοῦ μέρος, δύο δ' εἰς τὰ προσκείμενα. τὸ δὲ ΠΕΡΙ Ἐλκῶν καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΚΕΦΑΛῃ Τρωμάτων ἑκάτερον ἐξηγησάμην δι' ἑνὸς βιβλίου, τὸ δὲ πρῶτον ΤΩΝ Ἐπιδημιῶν, ὥσπερ γε καὶ τὸ τρίτον, διὰ τριῶν ἑκάτερον, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον δι' ἕξ, δι' ὀκτῶ δὲ τὸ ἕκτον: εἰς δὲ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΥΜΩΝ ὑπομνήματά μοι τρία γέγονεν, ὥσπερ γε καὶ εἰς τὸ

---

ἀγμός, ὄ: a fracture

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὄ: air

ἄρθρον, τό: a joint

ἀφορισμός, ὄ: an aphorism

γνήσιος, -α, -ον: authentic

δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, regime

ἑκάτερος: each of two

ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound

ἐξηγέομαι: to explain

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

ἐπιδημία, -ον: epidemic

ἑπτὰ: seven

ἰητρεῖον, τό: surgery

κεφαλή, ἡ: a head

οἰκησις, -εως, ἡ: habitation

ὀξύς, -εἰα, -ύ: sharp, keen

προγνωστικός, -ή, -όν: prognostic

προρρητικός, -ή, -όν: predictive

πρόσκειμαι: to be placed or laid by

τόπος, ὄ: a place

τραῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wound, hurt

τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

φημί: to declare, make known

φύσις, ἡ: nature, condition

χυμός, ὄ: juice, humor

χώρα, ἡ: a place

ώρα, ἡ: season

---

γεγραμμένα: perf. part., "the ones written"

ὃ ... φημὶ: "which I claim"

ἐπιγεγράφθαι: perf. inf. compl. δεῖν, "should be titled"

δεῖν: pr. inf. in ind. st. after φημὶ, "which I claim should" + inf.

τὸ γνήσιον: "the authentic part of it"

τὰ προσκείμενα: "the parts attached (by a later author)"

ἐξηγησάμην: ao., "I explicated"

γέγονεν: perf. of γίγνομαι, "three books came from me"

ΠΡΟΓΝΩΣΤΙΚΟΝ καὶ εἰς τὸ ΚΑΤ' ἸΗΤΡΕΙΟΝ καὶ εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΠΩΝ  
 ΚΑΙ ἈΕΡΩΝ ΚΑΙ ὙΔΑΤΩΝ: εἰς δὲ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΡΟΦΗΣ ὑπομνήματά  
 μοι τέτταρα γέγονεν, εἰς δὲ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΣΙΟΣ ἈΝΘΡΩΠΟΥ δύο, ὧν  
 ἤδη γεγονότων ἀκούσας ὑπὸ τινων διαβάλλεσθαι τὸ βιβλίον ὡς  
 οὐ γνήσιον ἔγραψα τρία τὴν ἐπιγραφὴν ἔχοντα τήνδε ὍΤΙ ΚΑΙ  
 ΚΑΤ' ἈΛΛΑ ΣΥΓΓΡΑΜΜΑΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΑΥΤΗΝ ΔΟΞΑΝ ἔχων ὁ Ἱπποκράτης  
 ΦΑΙΝΕΤΑΙ Τῆ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΟ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΣΙΟΣ ἈΝΘΡΩΠΟΥ. τῷ δ' Ἱπποκράτει  
 προσήκοντ' ἐστὶ καὶ ταῦτα: περὶ τῆς καθ' Ἱπποκράτην διαίτης  
 ἐπὶ τῶν ὀξέων νοσημάτων, ὥσπερ γε καὶ ἡ τῶν παρ' αὐτῷ  
 γλωττῶν ἐξήγησις, καὶ τὸ πρὸς Λύκον περὶ τοῦ ἀφορισμοῦ,  
 οὗ ἡ ἀρχὴ 'τὰ αὐξανόμενα πλείστον ἔχει τὸ ἔμφυτον θερμόν',

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: air

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin, first cause

αὐξάνω, -ά: to increase, augment

ἀφορισμός, ὁ: aphorism

γλῶττα, -ης, ἡ: a tongue

γνήσιος, -α, -ον: genuine, authentic

διαβάλλω: to attack, slander

δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, regime

δόξα, ἡ: a notion, opinion

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

ἔμφυτος, -ον: innate, natural

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

ἰητρεῖον, τό: surgery

ὀξύς, -έα, -ύ: sharp, acute

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

προγνωστικός, -ή, -όν: prognostic

προσήκω: to be proper to (+ *dat.*)

σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

τόπος, ὁ: a place

τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals

ὔδωρ, -ὔδατος, τό: water

φαίνω: to bring to light, make to appear

φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural qualities

ὧν ἤδη γεγονότων: perf. part. in gen. abs., "which (books) already having become"

ἀκούσας: "(I) having heard"

διαβάλλεσθαι: pr. pas. inf. after ἀκούσας, "having heard this book *to be attacked*"

ὡς οὐ γνήσιον: causal, "as not (being) genuine"

ἔχοντα (sc. βιβλία): n. pl., "three books *having* this title"

τὴν αὐτὴν δόξαν: "the same opinion"

ἔχων: pr. part. supplemental with φαίνεται, "H. seems *to have*" i.e., "H. clearly has"

τῇ (sc. δόξα): dat. after αὐτῇ, "same *as the opinion* in *On the Nature of Man*"

προσήκοντα: "are *proper to*" + dat.

παρ' αὐτῷ γλωττῶν: "explanation *of the words by him* (i.e. Hipp.)"

Λύκον: Lycus of Macedon

οὗ ἡ ἀρχή: "*whose beginning is*"

τὰ αὐξανόμενα: pr. part. nom. pl., "things growing"

ὥσπερ γε καὶ τὸ πρὸς Ἰουλιανὸν τὸν μεθοδικὸν ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐνεκάλε-  
σεν τοῖς Ἱπποκράτειοις ἀφορισμοῖς. Ἱπποκράτει δὲ προσήκει  
καὶ ἄλλο τι βιβλίον σμικρόν, ἐν ᾧ δείκνυμι τὸν ἄριστον ἰατρὸν  
πάντως εἶναι καὶ φιλόσοφον, ἐπιγράφεται δὲ τὸ βιβλίον καὶ διὰ  
συντομωτέρας ἐπιγραφῆς οὕτως: ὍΤΙ Ὁ ἌΡΙΣΤΟΣ ἼΑΤΡΟΣ ΚΑΙ  
ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΟΣ.

### VII. Περὶ τῶν εἰς Ἐρασίστρατον διαφερόντων.

Εἰς μὲν τὸ πρῶτον τῶν ΠΕΡΙ ΠΥΡΕΤΩΝ ὑπομνήματα γέγρα-  
πται τρία, τοῦ τρίτου δὲ περὶ πυρετῶν τὰ πρῶτα τῆς Ἐρα-  
σιστράτου θεραπευτικῆς πραγματείας ἐστὶν ὑπομνήματα: αὕτη  
δ' ἡ θεραπευτικὴ πραγματεία τὴν μὲν ἐπιγραφὴν ἔχει ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ  
ἘΡΑΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΟΥ ΘΕΡΑΠΕΥΤΙΚΩΝ ΛΟΓΙΣΜΩΝ, γέγονε δ' ἐν ὑπομνήμα-  
σι πέντε. ἔστι δὲ καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ἘΡΑΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΟΥ ἌΝΑΤΟΜΗΣ τρία  
βιβλία καὶ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΛΕΒΟΤΟΜΙΑΣ δύο, τό τε πρὸς Ἐρασίστρατον  
αὐτὸν γεγραμμένον καὶ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἐν Ῥώμῃ Ἐρασιστρατείους:

ἀφορισμός, ὁ: aphorism

δείκνυμι: to display, exhibit

διαφέρω: to differ

ἐγκαλέω: to call in

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

Ἐρασιστρατεῖοι, οἱ: followers of Erisistratus

Ἱπποκράτειος, -α, -ον: Hippocratic

λογισμός, ὁ: a counting, reasoning

μεθοδικός, -ή, -όν: methodic

πάντως: altogether

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

προσῆκω: to be related to + dat

πυρετός, ὁ: burning fever

Ῥώμη, ἡ: Rome

σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little

σύντομος, -ον: short

φλεβοτομία, ἡ: blood-letting

ὥσπερ γε καὶ: “and so also”

Ἰουλιανὸν: Julian the Methodist, a teacher of Galen in Alexandria

ὧν ἐνεκάλεσεν: ao. of ἐν-καλέω, “about *the things he criticized* in” + dat.

προσῆκει: “is related to” + dat.

εἶναι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after δείκνυμι, “I show that the best doctor *is*”

τὸ πρῶτον τῶν: “the first of the (books)”

τοῦ τρίτου: “the commentary *of the third* (book) is the first (part)”

Ἐρασίστρατον αὐτὸν: “one addressed to *E. himself*”

προσῆκει δ' Ἐρασιστράτῳ κάκεινο τὸ βιβλίον, ἐν ᾧ ζητοῦμεν, εἰ  
ΚΑΤΑ ΦΥΣΙΝ ἘΝ ἌΡΤΗΡΙΑΙΣ ΑἶΜΑ ΠΕΡΙΕΧΕΤΑΙ, καθάπερ γε καὶ τὸ  
ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ἈΝΑΠΝΟΗΣ καὶ τὰ ΤῶΝ ΦΥΣΙΚῶΝ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΝ τρία,  
ἃ περιέχει κρίσιν ἀπάντων ὧν ἔγραψεν Ἐρασίστρατος ἐν τοῖς  
καθόλου λόγοις ὑπὲρ τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν.

VIII. Περὶ τῶν Ἀσκληπιάδῃ προσηκόντων.

Ὅκτῳ μὲν ΠΕΡΙ ΤῶΝ ἈΣΚΛΗΠΙΑΔΟΥ ΔΟΓΜΑΤῶΝ ἐπιγεγραμμένα,  
μικρὸν δ' ἄλλο τὴν ἐπιγραφὴν ἔχον ΠΕΡΙ ΟΥΣΙΑΣ ΤΗΣ ΨΥΧΗΣ  
ΚΑΤ' ἈΣΚΛΗΠΙΑΔΗΝ.

ΙΧ. Περὶ τῶν τοῖς ἐμπειρικοῖς ἰατροῖς διαφερόντων.

τῆς Θεοδᾶ Εἰσαγωγῆς ὑπομνήματα πέντε: περὶ τῶν  
Μηνοδότου Σεβήρῳ ἔνδεκα: τῶν Σεραπίωνος πρὸς τὰς αἰρέσεις

---

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood

ἀναπνοή, ἡ: breathing

ἀρτηρία, ἡ: an artery

διαφέρω: to differ

εἰσαγωγή, ἡ: an introduction

ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: experienced, empirical

ἐνέργεια, ἡ: action, operation

ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

Θεοδᾶς, -α, ὁ: Theodas

καθόλου: on the whole, in general

κρίσις, ἡ: a critique

Μηνοδότος, ὁ: Menodotus

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little

οὐσία, ἡ: substance, property

περιέχω: to encompass

προσῆκω: to be related to (+ *dat.*)

Σεραπίων, -ονος, ὁ: Serapion

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: natural, native

φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural qualities

χρεία, ἡ: use, function

ψυχή, ἡ: soul

---

εἰ ... περιέχεται: ind. quest., "whether blood is contained"

ἀπάντων ὧν: with pron. attracted into the gen. case, "of everything which E. wrote"

καθόλου (=κατὰ ὄλου): adv., "in general"

Ἀσκληπιάδου: Asclepiades of Bithynia (1st C BCE), whose works have not survived

ἐπιγεγραμμένα: perf. part., "having been titled"

(sc. *περὶ*) τῆς Θεοδᾶ εἰσαγωγῆς: "(about) the Introduction of Theodas"

Θεοδᾶ: gen., "of Theodas (of Laodicea)"

Μηνοδότου: Menodotus of Nicomedia (2nd C. CE)

Σεβήρῳ: dat., "dedicated to Severus"

(sc. *περὶ*) τῶν Σεραπίωνος: "(about) the (works) of Serapion" of Alexandria (3rd. C BCE)

δύο Ὑποτυπώσεις Ἐμπειρικοί: Περὶ τῆς Ἰατρικῆς Ἐμπειρίας:  
 Περὶ τῆς τῶν Ἐμπειρικῶν Διαφωνίας τρία: πρὸς τὰ ἀντειρημένα  
 τοῖς περὶ τῆς διαφωνίας τῶν ἐμπειρικῶν τοῦ τε Θεοδᾶ κεφάλαια  
 ὑπομνήματα τρία: Προτρεπτικός ἐπ' Ἰατρικὴν: Σύνοψις τῶν  
 Ἡρακλείδου περὶ τῆς Ἐμπειρικῆς Αἰρέσεως ἑπτὰ.

### X. Περὶ τῶν τοῖς μεθοδικοῖς διαφερόντων.

Μεθοδικῆς Αἰρέσεως ἕξι: Πρὸς τὰ ὑπὸ Ἰουλιανοῦ Ἀντειρη-  
 μένα τοῖς Ἴπποκράτους ἀφορισμοῖς.

### XI. Περὶ τῶν εἰς τὰς ἀποδείξεις χρησίων βιβλίων.

Ἄπαντας ἀνθρώπους ὁρῶν, ἐν οἷς ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, εἰς-  
 τοὺς τ' ἀποδεικνύειν ἐπαγγελλομένους, ἐλέγχειν τε τοὺς πέλας

---

ἀμφισβητέω: to dispute	κεφάλαιος, -α, -ον: of the head, main
ἀντερῶ: to speak against, gainsay	μεθοδικός, -ή, -όν: belonging to the methodic school
ἀποδείκνυμι: to prove	ὁράω: to see
ἀποδείξεις, -εως, ἡ: a proof, exhibiting	πέλας: adv. near
ἀφορισμός, ὁ: aphorism	προτρεπτικός, -ή, -όν: persuasive, protreptic
διαφωνία, ἡ: discord, disagreement	σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view, synopsis
ἐλέγχω: to refute	ὑποτύπωσις, -εως, ἡ: an outline
ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: experienced, empiric	χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful
ἐπαγγέλλω: to tell, proclaim, announce	
Ἡρακλείδης, ὁ: Heraclides	

---

ὑποτυπώσεις ἐμπειρικάι: “empirical outlines”

πρὸς τὰ ἀντειρημένα: perf. part. of ἀντι-λέγω, “concerning the things said against  
 (i.e. counter arguments to)” + dat.

(πρὸς) κεφάλαια ὑπομνήματα: “concerning the main ideas”

Ἡρακλείδου: Heraclides of Tarentum (2nd C. BCE)

Ἰουλιανῶ: Julian the Methodist, a teacher of Galen in Alexandria

τὰ ... ἀντειρημένα: perf. of ἀντι-λέγω, “the things said against” i.e. the criticisms

εἰς τὰς ἀποδείξεις: “useful for proofs”

ἀνθρώπους: acc. subj. of ἐπαγγελλομένους in ind. st. after ὁρῶν, “seeing that men  
 profess”

ἐν οἷς: rel. attracted into the dat., “in (the things) which they dispute”

ἀποδεικνύειν: pr. inf. in ind. st. after ἐπαγγελλομένους, “profess that they are proving”

τοὺς πέλας: “to refute their neighbors”

ἐπιχειροῦντας, οὐδὲν οὕτως ἐσπούδασα μαθεῖν ἀπάντων  
 πρῶτον ὡς τὴν ἀποδεικτικὴν θεωρίαν ἠξίωσά τε παρὰ τῶν  
 φιλοσόφων--ἐκείνους γὰρ ἤκουον αὐτὴν διδάσκειν,--εἰ μὲν τι  
 καὶ ἄλλο κατὰ τὸ λογικὸν μέρος τῆς φιλοσοφίας διδάσκεται,  
 φυλάττειν εἰσαῦθις, τὴν δ' ὠδῖνα τῆς περὶ τὰς ἀποδείξεις ἐπι-  
 θυμίας παῦσαι διδάξαντας, ἦτις ἄρα μέθοδος ἐστίν, ἣν ὁ μαθὼν  
 ἐτέρου τε λέγοντος λόγον ἀποδεικτικὸν ἀκριβῶς γνωριεῖ, πότε-  
 ρον ὄντως ἐστὶ τοιοῦτος ἢ καθάπερ τι νόμισμα κίβδηλον ἔοι-  
 κε μὲν τῷ δοκίμῳ, μοχθηρὸς δὲ κατ' ἀλήθειαν ἐστίν, αὐτὸς τε

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate

ἄξιόω: to ask

ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: affording proof,  
demonstrative

γνωρίζω: to make known, point out, explain

δόκιμος, -ον: examined, tested

εἰσαῦθις: hereafter, afterwards

ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, yearning, longing

ἐπιχειρέω: to attempt to (+ *inf.*)

κίβδηλος, -ον: spurious, base

μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν: miserable, wretched

νόμισμα, -ατος, τό: a coin

ὅστις: any one who, anything which

παύω: to make to cease

πότερος, -α, -ον: whether of the two?

σπουδάζω: to be eager to (+ *inf.*)

φιλόσοφος, ὁ: a philosopher

φυλάττω: to keep guard

ὠδῖς, -ῖνος: pain (esp. of labor)

ἐπιχειροῦντας: pr. part. in ind. st. after ὄρων, “and seeing *that they try to*” + *inf.*

οὐδὲν οὕτως ... ὡς: “nothing so much ... as”

μαθεῖν: ao. *inf.* after ἐσπούδασα, “I was eager *to learn*”

ἠξίωσα: ao., “I asked” + *inf.*

ἤκουον: *impf.*, “I used to hear that” + *inf.*

αὐτὴν: i.e. logical proof

τι ἄλλο ... μέρος: subj. of διδάσκεται, “if *any other part* of philosophy is taught”

φυλάττειν: pr. *inf.* after ἠξίωσα, “I asked them *to keep* aside (this part)”

τῆς ... ἐπιθυμίας: “the pain of the desire”

παῦσαι: ao. *inf.* also complementing ἠξίωσα, “I asked them *to stop*”

διδάξαντας: ao. part. instr. agreeing with the acc. subj. of παῦσαι, “I asked (them) *by teaching* to stop”

ἦτις ἄρα μέθοδος ἐστίν: obj. cl. after διδάξαντας, “teaching *what the method is*”

ὁ μαθὼν: ao. part., subj. of γνωριεῖ, “*he who has learned* will discern”

ἐτέρου τε ... αὐτὸς τε: “both when someone else ... and when he himself”

ἐτέρου ... λέγοντος: gen. abs., “*when someone else speaks* a logical argument”

πότερον ἐστὶ ... ἢ: ind. quest. after γνωριεῖ, “*whether it is* really ... or”

ἔοικε μὲν ... μοχθηρὸς δὲ: “it seems to be (+ *dat.*) ... but in fact is without value”

αὐτὸς: “and he himself” i.e. the investigator

δυνήσεται καθ' ἕκαστον τῶν ζητουμένων ὁδῶ τινι χρώμενος ἐπὶ τὴν εὔρεσιν αὐτοῦ παραγενέσθαι. πᾶσιν οὖν τοῖς κατ' ἐκείνον τὸν χρόνον ἐνδόξοις Στωϊκοῖς τε καὶ Περιπατητικοῖς ἐμαντὸν ἐγχειρίσας πολλὰ μὲν ἔμαθον ἄλλα τῶν λογικῶν θεωρημάτων, ἃ τῷ μετὰ ταῦτα χρόνῳ σκοπούμενος ἄχρηστα πρὸς τὰς ἀποδείξεις εὔρον, ὀλίγιστα δὲ χρησίμως μὲν αὐτοῖς ἐζητημένα καὶ τοῦ προκειμένου σκοποῦ τυχεῖν ἐφίεμενα, διαπεφωνημένα δὲ καὶ

ἄχρηστος, -ον: useless

διαφωνέω: to be dissonant

ἐγχειρίζω: to apply oneself to

ἐνδοξος, -ον: of high repute

ἐφίημι: to send to, permit

εὔρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a finding, discovery

ζητέω: to seek, research

ὁδός, ἡ: a way, method

ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον: very few

παραγίνομαι: come near

περιπατητικός, -ή, -όν: Peripatetic, followers of Aristotle

πρόκειμαι: to be set before one

σκοπέω: to look at

σκοπός, ὁ: a goal

τυγχάνω: to happen upon (+ *gen.*)

χράσμαι: to use (+ *dat.*)

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful

δυνήσεται: fut., “will be able to” + inf.

τῶν ζητουμένων: pr. part., “each of the things being investigated”

χρώμενος: pr. part. instr., “by using some method”

αὐτοῦ: “the discovery of it,” i.e. of the thing being investigated

παραγενέσθαι: ao. inf. compl. δυνήσεται, “he will be able to come upon”

Στωϊκοῖς: the Stoic school of philosophy was famous for its, “propositional logic”

Περιπατητικοῖς: the Peripatetic or Aristotelian School of philosophy had a rigorous logic based on the syllogism

ἐγχειρίσας: ao. part., “having applied myself to” + dat.

ἔμαθον: ao., “I learned”

ἄλλα: “many other (aspects of)” + gen.

τῷ ... χρόνῳ: dat. of time when, “in the time after these things”

σκοπούμενος: pr. part. instr., “by inspecting”

ἄχρηστα: pred., “which I found to be useless”

εὔρον: unaugmented ao., “I found”

αὐτοῖς: dat. of agent, “by them” i.e. the Stoics and Peripatetics

ἐζητημένα: perf. part., “very few having been researched”

τοῦ προκειμένου: pr. part. gen. after τυχεῖν, “to happen upon the goal laid down before one”

ἐφίεμενα: pr. part. also agreeing with ὀλίγιστα, “and permitting to” + inf.

διαπεφωνημένα: perf. part. of δια-φωνέω, modifying ταῦτα, “these having become dissonant”

ταῦτα παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐκείνοις, ἓνα δὲ καὶ ταῖς φυσικαῖς ἐννοίαις ἐναντία, καὶ νῆ τοὺς θεούς, ὅσον ἐπὶ τοῖς διδασκάλοις, εἰς τὴν τῶν Πυρρωνείων ἀπορίαν ἐνεπεπτώκειν ἂν καὶ αὐτός, εἰ μὴ καὶ τὰ κατὰ γεωμετρίαν ἀριθμητικὴν τε καὶ λογιστικὴν κατέσχον, ἐν αἷς ἐπὶ πλείστον ὑπὸ τῷ πατρὶ παιδευόμενος ἐξ ἀρχῆς προεληλύθειν ἀπὸ πάππου τε καὶ προπάππου διαδεδεγμένῳ τὴν θεωρίαν.

ὁρῶν οὖν οὐ μόνον ἐναργῶς ἀληθῆ φαινόμενά μοι τὰ κατὰ τὰς ἐκλείψεων προρρήσεις ὠρολογίων τε καὶ κλειψυδρῶν κατα-

ἀληθής, -ές: unconcealed, true  
ἀπορία, ἡ: resourcelessness  
ἀριθμητική, ἡ: arithmetic  
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning  
γεωμετρία, ἡ: geometry  
διαδέχομαι: to receive  
διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master  
ἔκλειψις, -εως, ἡ: eclipse  
ἐμπίπτω: fall upon or into  
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, opposed to  
ἐναργής, -ές: visible, palpable  
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some  
ἐννοια, ἡ: intuition  
θεός, ὁ: god  
κατέχω: to hold fast, possess

κλειψύδρα, ἡ: a water-clock  
λογιστική, ἡ: mathematics  
ὁράω: to see  
παιδεύω: to bring up educate a child  
πατήρ, ὁ: a father  
πάππος, ὁ: a grandfather  
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest  
προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance  
πρόπαππος, ὁ: a great-grandfather  
πρόρρησις, -εως, ἡ: a prediction  
Πυρρώνειος, -ον: of Pyrrho  
φαίνω: to bring to light, make to appear  
φυσικός, -ή, -όν: natural, native  
ὠρολόγιον, τό: a sun-dial

ταῦτα: “these (elements of logical theory)”

ἐναντία: “some being *opposed to*” + dat.

νῆ τοὺς θεούς: “by the gods!”

ὅσον ἐπὶ τοῖς διδασκάλοις: “so far as it goes with teachers”

Πυρρωνείων: “the *aporia* of the Pyrrhonions,” who were renowned for their extreme scepticism

ἐνεπεπτώκειν ἂν: plupf. of ἐν-πίπτω, contrafactual, “I myself might have fallen into”

εἰ μὴ ... κατέσχον: ao. in contrafactual protasis, “if I hadn’t possessed”

παιδευόμενος: pr. part., “*from being educated* by my father”

προεληλύθειν: plupf. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “I had progressed”

διαδεδεγμένῳ: perf. part. dat. s. of δια-δέχομαι, “my father *having received*”

οὐ μόνον ... μοι: with φαινόμενα, “*appearing not only to me*,” i.e. clear to everyone

ἀληθῆ φαινόμενα: pr. part. n. pl. acc. after ὁρῶν, “*seeing the truth appearing*”

τὰ κατὰ: acc. resp., “the truth *with respect to the things having to do with*” + acc.



σκευὰς ὅσα τ' ἄλλα κατὰ τὴν ἀρχιτεκτονίαν ἐπινενόηται, βέλτιον ᾠήθην εἶναι τῷ τύπῳ τῶν γεωμετρικῶν ἀποδείξεων χρῆσθαι: καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς διαλεκτικωτάτους καὶ φιλοσόφους οὐ μόνον ἀλλήλοις ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑαυτοῖς ἠϋρισκον διαφερομένους, ἐπαινοῦντας ὅμως ἅπαντας ὡσαύτως τὰς γεωμετρικὰς ἀποδείξεις: «ἀλλήλοις» μὲν λέγω διαφέρεσθαι τοὺς φιλοσόφους ἐν τῇ λογικῇ θεωρίᾳ, τοὺς Περιπατητικούς τε καὶ Στωϊκοὺς καὶ Πλατωνικούς, «ἑαυτοῖς» δὲ πάλιν ἰδίᾳ τοὺς καθ' ἑκάστην αἴρεσιν (μικρὰ μὲν δὴ πῶς ἐστὶν ἢ παρὰ τοῖς Περιπατητικοῖς διαφωνία, μεγάλη δὲ παρὰ τοῖς Στωϊκοῖς καὶ Πλατωνικοῖς). κατὰ τοῦτο τοίνυν ἔτι καὶ μᾶλλον ἔγνω δεῖν ἀποστήναι μὲν

---

ἀρχιτεκτονία, ἡ: architecture, construction

βελτίων, -ον: better

γεωμετρικός, -ή, -όν: geometrical

διαλεκτικός, -ή, -όν: skilled in logical argument

διαφέρω: to differ

διαφωνία, ἡ: discord, disagreement

ἐπαινέω: to approve, praise

ἐπινοέω: to think on or of, contrive

εὑρίσκω: to find

κατασκευή, ἡ: preparation, construction

μικρός, -η, -ον: small

οἶμαι: to suppose, think

πάλιν: in turn, on the other hand

περιπατητικός, -ή, -όν: Peripatetic, Aristotelian

Πλατωνικός, -ή, -όν: Platonic

πως: somewhat

Στωϊκός, -η, -ον: Stoic

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

τύπος, ὁ: a type, kind

χράσμαι: to use

ὡσαύτως: in like manner, just so

---

ὅσα ... ἐπινενόηται: perf. of ἐπι-νοέω, "and whatever is calculated"

ᾠήθην: ao. pas. of οἶμαι, "I supposed" + acc. + inf.

χρῆσθαι: pr. inf. epex. after βέλτιον, "better to use" + dat.

αὐτοὺς ... φιλοσόφους: acc. subj. of ἠϋρισκον, "I found *these philosophers* differing"

ἀλλήλοις ... ἑαυτοῖς: dat with διαφερομένους, "differing *with each other* and *with themselves*"

διαφερομένους and ἐπαινοῦντας in ind. st. after ἠϋρισκον, "I discovered *that they were differing, yet they were praising*"

«ἀλλήλοις» μὲν λέγω ... «ἑαυτοῖς» δέ: "to differ 'among themselves' I mean... 'with themselves,'" an explanation of the two parts of the previous sentence

ἰδίᾳ: adv., "individually"

ἔγνω: ao., "I decided that it was necessary"

ἀποστήναι: ao. inf. of ἀπο-ἵστημι complementing δεῖν, "necessary to stand apart from" + gen.

ὧν ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσιν, ἀκολουθήσαι δὲ τῷ χαρακτήρι τῶν γραμμικῶν ἀποδείξεων. ὅσοι τοίνυν ἐθέλουσι κατὰ τὰς γραμμικὰς ἀποδείξεις ἀσκηθῆναι, παιδευθῆναι μὲν αὐτοῖς ἐν ἐκείναις συμβουλεύω, μετ' ἐκείνας δὲ τὴν ἡμετέραν ἀναλέξασθαι ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ πραγματεῖαν, ἣν ἐν πεντεκαίδεκα βιβλίοις ἐποίησάμην. ἔγραψα δ' ἄλλα πολλὰ γυμνάζων ἑμαυτόν, ὧν ἓνια μὲν ἀπώλετο κατὰ τὴν γενομένην πυρκαϊάν, ἡνίκα τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος ἐκαύθη, τινὰ δὲ φίλοις δεδομένα διασωθέντα παρὰ πολλοῖς ἐστι νῦν, ὥσπερ καὶ τὰλλα τὰ ἡμέτερα. καὶ μέντοι καὶ τῶν ὑπομνημάτων ὧν ἔγραψα τὰ μὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ δοθέντα φίλοις, τὰ

---

ἀκολουθέω: to follow

ἀναλέγω: to read through

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly

ἀσκέω: to train

ἀφίστημι: to stand apart from

γραμμικός, -ή, -όν: geometrical

γυμνάζω: to train, exercise

διασώζω: to preserve

εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace

ἐθέλω: to will, wish to (+ *inf.*)

ἔτιοι, -α.: some

ἡνίκα: at which time, when

καίω: to burn

παιδεύω: to educate

πεντεκαίδεκα: fifteen

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

πυρκαϊά, ἡ: a conflagration

συμβουλεύω: to advise, counsel (+ *inf.*)

τέμενος, -εος, τό: a sacred space, temple

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

χαρακτήρ, -ἦρος, ό: a type, kind

---

ἀκολουθήσαι: ao. inf. also complementing δεῖν, “necessary to follow” + dat.

ἀσκηθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. complementing ἐθέλουσι, “those who wish to train”

παιδευθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. complementing συμβουλεύω, “I counsel them to be educated”

ἐν ἐκείναις ... μετ' ἐκείνας: “in these (geometrical) things ... and after these”

ἀναλέξασθαι: ao. mid. of ἀνα-λέγω also after συμβουλεύω, “I counseled them to read through”

γυμνάζων: “for exercising myself”

ἀπώλετο: ao., “some of which were lost”

τὸ τῆς Εἰρήνης τέμενος: “the temple of Peace” built by Vespasian in 75 CE

ἐκαύθη: ao. pas. of καίω, “was burned” (in the fire of 192)

δεδομένα: perf. part. nom. pl., “some books having been given”

διασωθέντα: ao. pas. part. nom. pl., “having been saved”

ὧν: gen. by attraction, “of the commentaries which I wrote”

δοθέντα: ao. pas., “some having been given”

δ' ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκετῶν κλειψάντων ἐκδοθέντα παρ' ἄλλων ἔλαβον ὕστερον: ἔστι δ' ἐν αὐτοῖς τρία μὲν εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ἙΡΜΗΝΕΙΑΣ Ἀριστοτέλους, τέτταρα δ' εἰς τὸ πρότερον τῶν περὶ συλλογισμῶν, καθάπερ γε καὶ εἰς τὸ δεύτερον ἴσα τὸν ἀριθμὸν: ἐπιγράφουσι δ' αὐτὰ σχεδὸν ἅπαντες οἱ νῦν ἈΝΑΛΥΤΙΚΩΝ ΠΡΟΤΕΡΩΝ, ὥσπερ γε καὶ ΔΕΥΤΕΡΩΝ τὰ περὶ τῆς ἀποδείξεως. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Ἀριστοτέλης τῶν μὲν προτέρων ὡς ΠΕΡΙ ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΜΟΥ γεγραμμένων αὐτῷ μέμνηται, τῶν δὲ δευτέρων ὡς ΠΕΡΙ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ, ὧν ἐστὶ καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπομνήματα διασφζόμενα τῶν ἐμῶν, εἰς μὲν τὸ πρότερον ἕξ, εἰς δὲ τὸ δεύτερον πέντε. τούτων τῶν ὑπομνημάτων

ἀναλυτικός, -ή, -όν: analytical	ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as
ἀριθμός, ὁ: number	κλέπτω: to steal
διασφζω: to preserve through	μυμήσκω: to remind
ἐκδίδωμι: to circulate, publish	οἰκέτης, -ου, ὁ: a house-slave, menial
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine	συλλογισμός, ὁ: syllogism
ἐπιγράφω: to engrave, entitle	σχεδόν: nearly
ἐρμηνεία, ἡ: interpretation, explanation	ὕστερον: ( <i>adv.</i> ) later

κλειψάντων: ao. part., “by servants *who had stolen them*”

ἐκδοθέντα: ao. pas. part., “others *having been circulated*”

περὶ ἐρμηνείας: *On Interpretation* was the second of the six works comprising Aristotle's *Organon*, the, “tool-box” of logic

ἴσα τὸν ἀριθμὸν: “the same number (of books)” i.e. four

ἅπαντες οἱ νῦν: “nearly *everyone today*”

ἈΝΑΛΥΤΙΚΩΝ ΠΡΟΤΕΡΩΝ ... ΔΕΥΤΕΡΩΝ: the *Prior Analytics* and the *Posterior Analytics* of Aristotle, the third and fourth works of the Aristotle's *Organon*.

τῶν προτέρων ... γεγραμμένων: perf. part. used substantively, “of the prior (works) written” i.e. of the *Prior Analytics*

ὡς περὶ συλλογισμοῦ: i.e. Aristotle called it *On Syllogisms*

αὐτῷ μέμνηται: perf. of *μυμήσκω*, “reminded himself of” i.e., “made mention of” + gen.

τῶν δὲ δευτέρων: gen. also after *μέμνηται*, “but of the posterior (analytics)”

ὡς περὶ ἀποδείξεως: A. called his work *On Demonstrations*

εἰς μὲν ... εἰς δὲ: “*on the first book, six volumes ... on the second, five volumes*”

ἀπάντων οὐδὲν ὡς πρὸς ἔκδοσιν ἐγράφη, καθάπερ οὐδὲ τὰ  
 ἕξ εἰς τὸ Θεοφράστου βιβλίον, ὃ ΠΕΡΙ ΚΑΤΑΦΑΣΕΩΣ ΚΑΙ ἈΠΟ-  
 ΦΑΣΕΩΣ ἔγραψε (τὰ δ' εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΛΕΞΕΩΣ Εὐδήμου πρότερον  
 ἑταίροις ἀξιώσασιν ἐποιησάμην): τοῦ δὲ τῶν ΔΕΚΑ ΚΑΤΗΓΟΡΙΩΝ  
 οὐκ ἐποιησάμην οὔτ' ἑμαυτῷ τι τοιοῦτον ὑπόμνημα πρόσθεν  
 οὔθ' ἑτέροις ἔδωκα, καὶ διὰ τοῦθ' ὕστερόν ποτε τῶν ἑταίρων  
 τινὶ δεηθέντι ὑπομνήματ' ἔχειν περιέχονθ', ὅσα ἀνήκουσιν εἰς  
 τὰς τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ ζητουμένων λύσεις, ἐποιησάμην καὶ κοινωνεῖν  
 ἐκέλευσα τῶν ὑπομνημάτων ἐκείνοις μόνοις τοῖς ἀνεγνωκόσι

ἀνήκω: to be appropriate to

ἀξιώω: to request

ἀπόφασις, -εως, ἡ: a denial

δέομαι: to ask

ἔκδοσις, -εως, ἡ: a publication

ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a companion

ζητέω: to seek,

κατάφασις, -εως, ἡ: affirmation

κατηγορία, ἡ: a category

κελεύω: to order

κοινωνέω: to share

λέξις, -εως, ἡ: speech

λύσις, -εως, ἡ: a loosing, solution

περιέχω: to encompass

ποιέω: to do, make

πρόσθεν: before

ὕστερον: (*adv.*) later

ὡς πρὸς ἔκδοσιν: indicating an alleged purpose, “as though for (official) publication”

ἐγράφη: ao. pas., “none *was written*”

καθάπερ οὐδὲ: “*in the same way neither* the six volumes”

Θεοφράστου: Theophrastus of Eresos (371-287 BCE), a student of Aristotle and his successor as head of the Peripatetic School.

Εὐδήμου: Eudemus of Rhodes (370-300 BCE), student of Aristotle and editor of his works.

ἀξιώσασιν: ao. part. dat. pl., “for companions *who requested* it”

τοῦ δὲ τῶν δέκα κατηγοριῶν (sc. *περί*): “about the (book) of the *Ten Categories*,” the first work of Aristotle’s *Organon*.

οὔτ' ἑμαυτῷ ... οὔθ' ἑτέροις: “neither for myself ... nor for others”

τινὶ δεηθέντι: ao. pas. part. dat., “to someone who had asked” + inf.

ἔχειν: pr. inf. after *δεηθέντι*, “asked *to have*”

περιέχονθ': pr. part. n. pl. agreeing with *ὑπομνήματ'*, “commentary *containing*”

ὅσα ἀνήκουσιν: obj. cl. after *περιέχοντα*, “containing *whatever things are appropriate*”

εἰς τὰς ... λύσεις: “appropriate *to the solutions*”

ζητουμένων: pr. part. gen. pl., “of the questions posed”

κοινωνεῖν: pr. inf. with *ἐκέλευσα*, “I ordered them *to share* X (gen.) with Y (dat.)”

τοῖς ἀνεγνωκόσι: perf. part. dat., “with those only *who have read*”

παρὰ διδασκάλῳ τὸ βιβλίον ἢ πάντως γε προεισηγμένοις δι' ἑτέρων ἐξηγητικῶν, ὅποια τὰ τ' Ἀδράστου καὶ Ἀσπασίου ἐστίν. ἔτι δὲ παῖς ὢν ἠνίκα πρῶτον ὁ πατήρ μέ τιμὴν τὴν λογικὴν θεωρίαν Χρυσίππου τε καὶ τῶν ἐνδόξων Στωϊκῶν διδάξαντι παρέδωκεν, ἐποιησάμην ἑμαυτῷ τῶν Χρυσίππου συλλογιστικῶν βιβλίων ὑπομνήματα καὶ ταῦθ' ὕστερον ἐφάνησαν ἔχοντές τινες ἐν Περγάμῳ μὲν καταλειφθέντα μετὰ πολλῶν ὑπομνημάτων, ἃ μειράκιον ὢν ἐποιησάμην, δοθέντα δ' ὑπ' οἰκέτου τισὶ τῶν αἰτησάντων. ἃ δ' ἐγὼ μετὰ τὴν ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ πραγ-

αἰτέω: to ask, beg

Ἀδράστος, ὁ: Adrasus

Ἀσπασίος, ὁ: Aspasius

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

ἐξηγητικός, -ή, -όν: of or for interpretation

ἐνδοξος, -ον: of high repute

ἠνίκα: at which time, when

καταλείπω: to leave behind

μειράκιον, τό: a boy

οἰκέτης, -ου, ὁ: a house-slave

ὅποιος: of what sort or quality

παῖς, ὁ: a child

παραδίδωμι: to hand over to another

πατήρ, ὁ: a father

πάντως: altogether

Πέργαμον: Pergamum, the home town of Galen

πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work

προεισάγω: to introduce before

Στωϊκός, -η, -ον: Stoic

συλλογιστικός, -ή, -όν: syllogistic

φαίνω: to bring to light, make to appear

Χρυσίππος, ὁ: Chrysippus

τὸ βιβλίον: i.e. *The Categories*

προεισηγμένοις: perf. part. dat. of προ-εις-άγω, “with those who have been already introduced”

δι' ἑτέρων ἐξηγητικῶν: “through other exegetical (works)”

Ἀδράστου: Adrastus of Aphrodisias (2nd C CE), a Peripatetic philosopher

Ἀσπασίου: Aspasius (80-150 CE), a Peripatetic philosopher, whose commentary on the *Nicomachean Ethics* is the earliest surviving commentary on Aristotle

Χρυσίππου: Chrysippus of Soli (3C BCE), a famous Stoic philosopher

τιμὴν ... διδάξαντι: ao. part. dat. after παρέδωκεν, “handed me over to someone who taught”

ἐφάνησαν: ao. pas., “some possessing them brought to light these (commentaries)”

καταλειφθέντα: ao. pas. part. of κατα-λείπω, “having been left behind”

μειράκιον ὢν: pr. part., “being a boy”

δοθέντα: ao. pas. part., “having been given out to” + dat.

αἰτησάντων: ao. part., “to some of those who asked”

ἃ δ' ἐγὼ ... ἔγραψα: “which I wrote,” the antecedent of ἃ is ταῦτα at the end of the sentence

ματείαν ἔγραψα πλατύτερον ἐξεργασμένα τῶν ἐν ἐκείνοις  
 συντόμως εἰρημένων, ταῦτ' ἐστί: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἈΝΑΓΚΑΙΩΝ Εἰς τὰς  
 Ἀποδείξεις ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ Παραλειπομένων Προτάσεων ἔν τῇ  
 Λέξει τῶν Ἀποδείξεων ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ Ἴσοδυναμουσῶν Προτά-  
 σεων ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ Κατὰ τὸ «Διότι» Ἀποδείξεων ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ  
 Τῶν Συλλογισμῶν Ἀριθμοῦ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ Παραδείγματος δύο: ΠΕΡΙ  
 Ἐπαγωγῆς ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ Ἐτικίνοσ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ Ὁμοιοτήτοσ τρία: ΠΕΡΙ  
 Τῶν Ἐξ Ὑποθέσεων Ἀρχῶν ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ Τῶν Κατὰ τὸ Γένος καὶ τὸ  
 εἶδος καὶ τῶν συζυγούντων αὐτοῖσ σημαινόμενων ἡμῖν κατὰ  
 τὴν αὐτομάτοσ φωνῆν ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ Δύνατοσ: ΠΕΡΙ Τῶν Πο-  
 λαχῶσ λεγόμενων τρία: ΠΕΡΙ Τῶν ἔν ταισ Τεχναῖσ Κοινῶν καὶ

ἀναγκαῖοσ, -α, -ον: necessary  
 ἀριθμόσ, ὁ: number  
 ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning  
 αὐτόματοσ, -η, -ον: spontaneous  
 γένοσ, -οσ, τό: genus  
 διότι: for the reason that, since  
 δυνατόσ, -ή, -όν: possible  
 εἶδοσ, -εοσ, τό: species  
 εἰκῶν, -όνοσ, ἡ: simile, likeness  
 ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out to perfection  
 ἐπαγωγή, ἡ: induction  
 ἰσοδυναμέω: to have equal power  
 κοινόσ, -ή, -όν: common

λέξισ, -εωσ, ἡ: a speaking  
 ὁμοιότητοσ, -ητοσ, ἡ: likeness, resemblance  
 παραλείπω: to leave behind, omit  
 παράδειγμα, -ατοσ, τό: an example  
 πλατύσ, -εἶα, -ύ: wide, broad  
 πολλαχῶσ: in many ways  
 πρότασισ, -εωσ, ἡ: a proposition, premiss  
 σημαίνω: to indicate, point out  
 συζυγέω: to join together  
 συλλογισμόσ, ὁ: computation  
 σύντομοσ, -ον: a short  
 ὑπόθεσισ, -εωσ, ἡ: hypothesis, supposition  
 φωνή, ἡ: a sound, voice, speech

πλατύτερον: adv., “in greater detail”  
 ἐξεργασμένα: perf. part. n. pl. agreeing with **ἃ** ... ταῦτα, “things worked out”  
 τῶν ... εἰρημένων: perf. part. of λέγω, “of the things said”  
 ἐν ἐκείνοισ: i.e. in *Logical Demonstrations*  
 παραλειπομένων: pr. part. pas., “on omitted premises”  
 ἰσοδυναμουσῶν: “on equally valid premises”  
 κατὰ τὸ διότι: “on proofs with ‘because’ in them”  
 συζυγούντων: pr. part., “and things joined to them,” i.e. to ‘species’ and ‘genus’  
 κατὰ τὴν αὐτόματοσ φωνῆν: “in ordinary speech”  
 πολλαχῶσ: “in more than one sense”

ΊΔΙΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΑΥΤΟΥΣ ΠΕΡΙΤΡΕΠΟΝΤΩΝ ΛΟΓΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΝΔΕΧΟΜΕΝΩΝ ΠΡΟΤΑΣΕΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΚ ΜΙΚΤΩΝ ΠΡΟΤΑΣΕΩΝ ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΜΩΝ ἔν: ὍΠΩΣ ΧΡΗ ΔΙΑΚΡΙΝΕΙΝ ΤΗΝ ΠΡΑΓΜΑΤΙΚΗΝ ΖΗΤΗΣΙΝ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤ' ὈΝΟΜΑ ΚΑΙ ΣΗΜΑΙΝΟΜΕΝΟΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΚΛΕΙΤΟΜΑΧΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΛΥΣΕΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΚΟΙΝΟΥ ΛΟΓΟΥ δύο: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΡΙΣΤΗΣ ΔΙΔΑΣΚΑΛΙΑΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΦΑΒΩΡΙΝΟΝ: ὙΠΕΡ ἘΠΙΚΤΗΤΟΥ ΠΡΟΣ ΦΑΒΩΡΙΝΟΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΜΩΝ: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΡΙΣΤΗΣ ΑἲΡΕΣΕΩΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ ὍΡΘΟΤΗΤΟΣ τρία: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΤΩΝ ὄντων Ἐκαστον ἔν τ' εἶναι ΚΑΙ ΠΟΛΛΑ: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ὍΤΙ ΤΟΙΣ Ἀντικειμένοις ἔν ΚΑΙ ΤΑΥΤΟΝ

ἀντίκειμαι: to be opposite, contradictory

διακρίνω: to separate, distinguish

διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction

ἐνδέχομαι: to receive, accept

ζήτησις, -εως, ἡ: inquiry

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common

λύσις, -εως, ἡ: a solution

μικτός, -ή, -όν: mixed, blended, compound

ὀρθότης, -ητος, ἡ: correctness

ὄνομα, τό: name

περιτρέπω: to reverse, contradict

πραγματικός, -ή, -όν: practical

πρότασις, -εως, ἡ: a proposition, premiss

σημαίνω: to indicate

συλλογισμός, ό: syllogism

ταυτός, -ή, -όν: identical

Φαβωρίνος, ό: Favorinus

χρεία, ἡ: use

χρή: it is necessary

περιτρεπόντων: pr. part., “arguments *undermining* themselves”

ἐνδεχομένων: pr. part., “on *acceptable* premises”

τῆς (sc. ζήτησεως) κατ' ὄνομα: gen. after διακρίνειν, “to distinguish practical inquiry from verbal (*inquiry*)”

σημαινόμενον: pr. part., “indicating” i.e. merely *semantic* inquiry

Κλειτομάχου: Clitomachus of Carthage (187-110 BCE), a member of the skeptic school

Φαβωρίνον: Favorinus of Arelate, a sophist and philosopher contemporary to Galen

Ἐπικτήτου: Epictetus (55-135), a famous Stoic philosopher

τοῦ ... εἶναι: art. inf. gen., “on each thing *being*”

ἕκαστον: acc. subj. of εἶναι, “*each* of existing things”

ἐν τε ... καὶ πολλά: pred., “both one and many”

περὶ τοῦ: “about the (proposition) that...,”

τοῖς ἀντικειμένοις: pr. part. dat. after ἀκολουθεῖν, “to follow from *opposites*”

ἜΞ ΑΝΑΓΚΗΣ ἈΚΟΛΟΥΘΕΙΝ ἈΔΥΝΑΤΟΝ ἜΣΤΙΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΚΤΙΚΗΣ ἘΥΡΕΣΕΩΣ ἔν: ΔΙΑΛΟΓΟΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΟΝ ἸΔΙΩΣ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΑΣ ΚΟΙΝΑΣ ἘΝΝΟΙΑΣ: ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ἘΠΗΡΕΑΣΤΙΚΩΣ ἈΚΟΥΟΝΤΑΣ ΤΩΝ ὄΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΤΕΧΝΩΝ ΣΥΣΤΑΣΕΩΣ *τρία*: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΣΗΜΑΙΝΟΜΕΝΩΝ ἘΚ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤ' ΕΙΔΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΓΕΝΟΣ ΦΩΝΗΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑΚΕΙΜΕΝΩΝ ΑΥΤΟΙΣ: ΣΥΝΟΨΙΣ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΚΤΙΚΗΣ ΘΕΩΡΙΑΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΡΙΣΕΩΣ ΤΩΝ ΔΙΑΦΩΝΟΥΝΤΩΝ ἘΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΔΟΓΜΑΣΙΝ: ὍΤΙ ΤΗΣ ΠΡΩΤΗΣ ΟΥΣΙΑΣ ἈΧΩΡΙΣΤΟΣ ἢ ΠΟΣΟΤΗΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΔΙ' ἈΔΥΝΑΤΟΥ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΝΕΚΑ ΤΟΥ ΓΙΓΝΟΜΕΝΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤ' ὄΝΟΜΑ ΚΑΙ ΣΗΜΑΙΝΟΜΕΝΟΝ ΖΗΤΗΣΕΩΣ.

---

ἀδύνατος, -ον: impossible (+ *inf.*)

ἀκολουθέω: to follow

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity

ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: affording proof, demonstrative

ἄχωριστος, -ον: indivisible

γένος, -ους, τό: genus

γίγνομαι: to happen

διαφωνέω: to be dissonant

διάλογος, ὁ: a conversation, dialogue

εἶδος, -εος, τό: species

ἔνεκα: on account of, for the sake of

ἐννοια, ἡ: intuition

ἐπηρεαστικῶς: insolently

εὑρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a finding, discovery

ζήτησις, -εως, ἡ: a seeking

ἰδίως: privately

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: a power of distinguishing

οὐσία, ἡ: substance

ὄνομα, τό: a name, word

παράκειμαι: to lie beside

ποσότης, -ητος, ἡ: quantity

σημαίνω: to indicate, make known

σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view

σύστασις, -εως, ἡ: a composition

φωνή, ἡ: a sound, expression

---

ἀκολουθεῖν: pr. inf. epex. after ἀδύνατόν, “it is impossible that one and the same thing *follows logically*,” with acc. subj. ἔν καὶ ταὐτόν, “one and the same thing”

τοὺς ... ἀκούοντας: pr. part., “those hearing,” i.e. interpreting + gen.

τῶν σημαυνομένων: pr. part. pas., “on the things *signified*”

ἐκ τῆς ... φωνῆς καὶ τῶν παρακειμένων: “*from the expression and the things related to those words*”

κατ' εἶδος καὶ γένος: “according to *species* and *genus*”

ἐνεκά του: “for some reason or purpose”

τῶν γιγνομένων: pr. part., “the things that happen”



## XII. Περὶ τῶν τῆς ἠθικῆς φιλοσοφίας βιβλίων.

Περὶ τῶν τῆς ἠθικῆς φιλοσοφίας ἐζητημένων ὅσα μοι δοκεῖ, διὰ τῶν ὑπογεγραμμένων βιβλίων ἀπεφηνάμην: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἸΔΙΩΝ ἘΚΑΣΤῶ ΠΑΘΩΝ ΚΑΙ ἈΜΑΡΤΗΜΑΤΩΝ ΤΗΣ ΔΙΑΓΝΩΣΕΩΣ ΔΥΟ: ΠΕΡΙ ἩΘΩΝ τέτταρα: ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΦΑΒΩΡΙΝΟΝ ΚΑΤΑ ΣΩΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ: ΠΕΡΙ ἈΛΥΠΙΑΣ ἓν, ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΚΑΤΑ ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΙΑΝ ΤΕΛΟΥΣ ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ἘΠΙΔΕΙΚΝΥΜΕΝΩΝ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ἈΚΟΥΟΝΤΑΣ ΣΥΝΟΥΣΙΑΣ ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἈΝΑΓΙΓΝΩΣΚΟΝΤΩΝ ΛΑΘΡΑ ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ ἈΜΑΡΤΗΜΑΤΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΚΟΛΑΣΕΩΣ Ἰσοτήτος ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ ΠΑΡΑΜΥΘΙΑΣ ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἘΝ ΑΥΛῆ ΜΕΝΑΡΧΟΥ ΔΙΑΤΡΙΒΗΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΒΑΚΧΙΑΗΝ ΚΑΙ ΚΥΡΟΝ ἓν: ΠΕΡΙ

ἀλυπία, ἡ: freedom from pain or grief  
 ἀμάρτημα, -ατος, τό: a failure  
 ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce  
 αὐλή, ἡ: courtyard  
 Βακχίδης, ὁ: Bacchides  
 διατριβή, ἡ: a diatribe  
 διάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: a diagnosis  
 ζητέω: to seek, seek for  
 ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral  
 ἦθος, -εος, τό: moral behavior, ethics  
 ἰσότης, -ητος, ἡ: equivalence

κόλασις, -εως, ἡ: punishment  
 Κύρος, ὁ: Cyrus  
 λάθρη, -α: secretly  
 Μενάρχος, ὁ: Menarchus  
 παραμυθία, ἡ: encouragement  
 πάθος, τό: affection  
 συνουσία, ἡ: social intercourse, relationship  
 Σωκράτης, ὁ: Socrates  
 τέλος, -εος, τό: an end, goal  
 ὑπογράφω: to write below  
 Φαβωρίνος, ὁ: Favorinus

Most of these moral works are not extant. A Greek text of *περὶ ἀλυπίας* was recently discovered and published in 2007 in the Budé series.

ἐζητημένων: perf. part., “about *the things questioned*” i.e. the matter of inquiry  
 ὅσα μοι δοκεῖ: “what I think”  
 ὑπογεγραμμένων: perf. part., “the books *written down below*”  
 ἀπεφηνάμην: ao. mid. of ἀπο-φαίνω, “I made clear”  
 περὶ ... τῆς διαγνώσεως: “about the diagnosis”  
 ἰδίων: “affections *particular to*” + dat.  
 κατὰ Σωκράτους: “against Socrates”  
 ἐπιδεικνυμένων: pr. part., “of those making demonstrations”

ΤΗΣ ἘΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΔΙΑΛΟΓΟΙΣ ΣΥΝΟΥΣΙΑΣ ἔν: ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ἈΓΟΡΑΙΟΥΣ  
ῬΗΤΟΡΑΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ἩΔΟΝΗΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΟΝΟΥ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἈΚΟΛΟΥΘΩΝ  
ἘΚΑΣΤῶ ΤΕΛΕΙ ΒΙΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΔΗΜΟΣΙΑ ῬΗΘΕΝΤΩΝ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ  
ἈΠΟ ΤΩΝ ΑἰΡΕΣΕΩΝ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ὍΜΟΝΟΙΑΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΑἰΔΟΥΣ δύο: ΠΕΡΙ  
ΤΩΝ ΔΗΜΟΣΙΑ ῬΗΘΕΝΤΩΝ ΚΑΤΑ ΚΟΛΑΚΩΝ δύο: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΔΙΑΒΟΛΗΣ,  
ἐν ᾧ καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἰδίου βίου: ΚΡΟΝΙΣΚΟΙ ἑπτὰ ἐν ἐνί: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ  
ἘΠΙ ΠΕΡΤΙΝΑΚΟΣ ΔΗΜΟΣΙΑ ῬΗΘΕΝΤΩΝ ἔν: ΜΕΧΡΙ ΠΟΣΟΥ ΤΗΣ ΠΑΡΑ  
ΤΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ ΤΙΜΗΣ ΚΑΙ ΔΟΣΗΣ ΦΡΟΝΤΙΣΤΕΩΝ ἔστιν: ΠΕΡΙ ΔΙΑ-  
ΘΗΚΩΝ ΠΟΙΗΣΕΩΣ.

---

ἀγοραῖος, -ον: in, of, or belonging to the  
forum

αἰδώς, -ούς: a sense of shame, self-respect

ἀκόλουθος, -ον: following, attending on

βίος, ὁ: life

δημοσίᾳ: publicly

διαβολή, ἡ: false accusation, slander

διαθήκη, ἡ: a disposition, will

διάλογος, ὁ: a dialogue

δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation

ἑπτὰ: seven

ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure

κόλαξ, -ακος, ὁ: a flatterer, fawner

Κρονίσκος, ὁ: an obscure term for a kind of  
composition

μέχρι: up to (+ gen.)

ὁμόνοια, ἡ: unity, concord

Περτίναξ, -ακος, ὁ: Pertinax

ποίησις, -εως, ἡ: a making, creation

πόνος, ὁ: work

πόσος, -η, -ον: how much?

ῥήτωρ, -ορος, ὁ: a public speaker

συνουσία, ἡ: social intercourse, attendance

τέλος, -εος, τό: purpose, end

τιμή, ἡ: honor

φροντίζω: to consider

---

συνουσίας: “on the relationship towards (πρὸς)”

τοὺς ἀκούοντας: “the hearers,” i.e. one’s audience

περὶ ... ἰσότητος: “about the equivalence” i.e. equity or appropriateness

τῶν ἀκολουθῶν: “on the consequences”

ῥηθέντων: ao. pas. part. of ἔρέω, “of things spoken”

τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν αἰρέσεων: “those who are from the sects” i.e. adherents of a sect

κατὰ κολάκων: “against flatterers”

ἐν ᾧ (sc. βιβλίῳ): “in which (book)”

τοῦ ἰδίου βίου: “about my own life”

ἑπτὰ ἐν ἐνί: “seven *kroniskoi* in one volume,” an obscure genre

Περτίνακος: Pertinax, emperor for three months in 193

μέχρι πόσου: “up to how much”

φροντιστέον: verbal adj. of φροντίζω, used periphrastically with ἔστιν, “it ought to be considered” + gen.

## XIII. Τὰ πρὸς τὴν Πλάτωνος φιλοσοφίαν ἀνήκοντα.

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΑΙΡΕΣΕΩΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΝ Τῷ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΤΙΜΑΙΩ ἸΑΤΡΙΚΩΣ Εἴρημενων Ὑπομνήματα τέτταρα: ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ Ἐταίρους ἢ Πλάτων: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ Ἰδίων Δοξάντων τρία: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤΑ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΑ ΛΟΓΙΚΗΣ ΘΕΩΡΙΑΣ: ΠΛΑΤΩΝΙΚΩΝ ΔΙΑΛΟΓΩΝ ΣΥΝΟΨΕΩΣ ὀκτώ: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΝ Φιληβῷ Μεταβάσεων ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΤΗΣ ΨΥΧΗΣ ΜΕΡΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΝ τρία: Ὅτι ταῖς τοῦ Σώματος Κράσεσιν αἱ τῆς Ψυχῆς Ἐπιόνται Δυνάμεις: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ Ἱπποκράτους ΚΑΙ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΔΟΓΜΑΤΩΝ ἐννέα.

XIV. Περὶ τῶν πρὸς τὴν Ἀριστοτέλους φιλοσοφίαν ἀνηκόντων.

Εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ Ἑρμηνείας ὑπομνήματα τρία: ΠΡΟΤΕΡΩΝ Ἀναλυτικῶν τοῦ προτέρου ὑπομνήματα τέτταρα, τοῦ δευτέρου τέτταρα, ΔΕΥΤΕΡΩΝ δὲ τοῦ προτέρου ἕξ, τοῦ δευτέρου ὑπομνήματα πέντε: εἰς τὰς ΔΕΚΑ ΚΑΤΗΓΟΡΙΑΣ ὑπομνήματα

ἀναλυτικός, -ή, -όν: analytical  
 ἀνήκω: to be related, be concerned with  
 (πρὸς)  
 Ἀριστοτέλης, ὁ: Aristotle  
 διάλογος, ὁ: a conversation, dialogue  
 ἔπομαι: to follow  
 ἐρμηνεία, ἡ: interpretation, explanation  
 ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate  
 Ἱπποκράτης, ὁ: Hippocrates  
 κατηγορία, ἡ: category

κράσις, -εως: a mixture  
 μετάβασις, -εως, ἡ: analogy  
 Πλάτων, -ωνος, ὁ: Plato  
 Πλατωνικός, -η, -ον: Platonic  
 σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ: a general view  
 σῶμα, τό: a body  
 Τιμαῖος, ὁ: Timaeus, a Platonic dialogue  
 Φιλήβος, ὁ: Philebus, a Platonic dialogue  
 ψυχή, ἡ: soul

εἰρημένων: perf. part. of λέγω, “of the things said”

τῶν ἰδίων δοξάντων: ao. part., “about those having their own opinions”

ταῖς ... κράσεσιν: dat. after ἔπονται, “follow the mixtures of the body”

τοῦ προτέρου ... τοῦ δευτέρου: “on the first book ... on the second book”

δευτέρων δὲ τοῦ προτέρου: “six (books) on the first book of The Posterior (Analytics)”

τοῦ δευτέρου ... πέντε: “five on the second (book of The Posterior Analytics)”

τέτταρα: εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΚΑΤΑΦΑΣΕΩΣ ΚΑΙ ἈΠΟΦΑΣΕΩΣ ΘΕΟΦΡΑΣΤΟΥ ὑπομνήματα ἕξι: εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΟΥ ΠΟΣΑΧΩΣ ὑπομνήματα τρία: εἰς τὸ ΠΡΩΤΟΝ ΚΙΝΟΥΝ ἈΚΙΝΗΤΟΝ ΑΥΤΟ: εἰς τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΛΕΞΕΩΣ ΕΥΔΗΜΟΥ ὑπομνήματα τρία: περὶ τῶν ΚΑΤΑ ΤΟ «ΔΙΟΤΙ» ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΝ ἕν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἘΚ ΜΙΚΤΩΝ ΠΡΟΤΑΣΕΩΝ ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΜΩΝ ἕν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑ ΤΗΝ ΛΕΞΙΝ ΣΟΦΙΣΜΑΤΩΝ.

XV. Τὰ πρὸς τὴν τῶν Στωϊκῶν φιλοσόφων διαφέροντα.

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤΑ ΧΡΥΣΙΠΠΟΝ ΛΟΓΙΚΗΣ ΘΕΩΡΙΑΣ τρία: ΤΗΣ ΧΡΥΣΙΠΠΟΥ ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΤΙΚΗΣ ΠΡΩΤΗΣ ὑπομνήματα τρία, ΔΕΥΤΕΡΑΣ ἕν: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΛΟΓΙΚΗΣ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΣ ΚΑΙ ΘΕΩΡΙΑΣ ἑπτά: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΤΩΝ Εἰς τοὺς ΣΥΛΛΟΓΙΣΜΟΥΣ ΘΕΩΡΗΜΑΤΩΝ πρῶτον καὶ δεύτερον: ὍΤΙ Ἡ ΓΕΩΜΕΤΡΙΚΗ ἈΝΑΛΥΤΙΚΗ Ἀμείνων τῆς τῶν Στωϊκῶν ἕν:

---

ἀκίνητος, -ον: unmoved, motionless  
ἀμείνων, -ον: better (+ *gen.*)  
ἀναλυτική, ἡ: analytical science  
ἀπόφασις, -εως, ἡ: denial  
γεωμετρικός, -ή, -όν: geometrical  
διότι: for the reason that, because  
ἑπτά: seven  
κατάφασις, -εως, ἡ: affirmation  
κινέω: to set in motion, to move

---

λέξις, -εως, ἡ: speech  
μικτός, -ή, -όν: mixed  
ποσαχῶς: in how many ways?  
πρότασις, -εως, ἡ: a proposition, the premiss  
σόφισμα, -ατος, τό: sophism  
συλλογισμός, ὁ: a syllogism  
συλλογιστικός, -ή, -όν: syllogistic  
χρεία, ἡ: use of (+ *gen.*)  
Χρύσιππος, ὁ: Chrysippus

---

περὶ τοῦ ποσαχῶς: “On the Number of Different Ways”

πρῶτον κινῶν: pr. part., “the first mover”

κατὰ τὸ διότι: “proofs using ‘because’”

τῆς (sc. ἀναλυτικῆς) τῶν Στωϊκῶν: gen. after ἀμείνων, “better than *the (analytical science) of the Stoics*”

## XVI. Τὰ πρὸς τὴν Ἐπικούρου φιλοσοφίαν ἀνήκοντα.}

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤ' ἘΠΙΚΟΥΡΟΝ ΕΥΔΑΙΜΟΝΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΜΑΚΑΡΙΟΥ ΒΙΟΥ  
 ΔΥΟ: ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΚΑΤ' ἘΠΙΚΟΥΡΟΝ ἈΜΑΥΡΟΥΜΕΝΗΣ ἩΔΟΝΗΣ: ὍΤΙ ΤΑ  
 ΠΟΙΗΤΙΚΑ ΤΗΣ ἩΔΟΝΗΣ ἘΛΛΙΠΩΣ ἘΠΙΚΟΥΡῶ ΛΕΛΕΚΤΑΙ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ  
 ΤΗΣ ἩΔΟΝΙΚΗΣ ΑἲΡΕΣΕΩΣ: Εἰ ἡ ΦΥΣΙΟΛΟΓΙΑ ΧΡΗΣΙΜΟΣ ΕἰΣ ΤΗΝ  
 ἩΘΙΚΗΝ ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΙΑΝ ἔν: περὶ τῶν ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΣΟΦΙΣΤΑΣ ἐννέα  
 Μητροδώρου: ἘΠΙΣΤΟΛΗ ΠΡΟΣ ΚΕΛΣΟΝ ἘΠΙΚΟΥΡΕΙΟΝ: ἘΠΙΣΤΟΛΗ  
 ΠΟΥΔΕΝΤΙΑΝΟΥ ἘΠΙΚΟΥΡΕΙΟΥ.

---

ἀμαυρόω: to make dim, faint

βίος, ὁ: life

ἔλλιπῶς: defectively

Ἐπικούρειος, -ον: Epicurean

Ἐπίκουρος, ὁ: Epicurus

ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message, command

εὐδαίμων, -ον: happy

ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral

ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure

ἡδονικός, -ή, -όν: for pleasure, hedonistic

Κέλσος, ὁ: Celsus

μακάριος, -α, -ον: blessed

Μητροδώρος, ὁ: Metrodorus

ποιητικός, -ή, -όν: productive

Πουδεντιανός, ὁ: Pudentianus

σοφιστής, -οῦ, ὁ: a sophist

φυσιολογία, ἡ: inquiry into natural causes

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful

---

Ἐπίκουρον: Epicurus (341-270 BCE), founder of his eponymous school of philosophy

ἀμαυρουμένης: pr. part., “diminished pleasure”

τὰ ποιητικά: “the efficient causes”

Ἐπικούρω: dat. of agent after λέλεκται, “by Epicurus”

λέλεκται: perf. pas. of λέγω, “have been described”

χρήσιμος: pred., “is useful”

τῶν ... ἐννέα: “on the seven (books)”

Μητροδώρου: Metrodorus of Lampsacus (331-287 BCE), a major proponent of Epicureanism

Κέλσον: Celsus the Epicurean (2nd. CE)

XVII. Τὰ τοῖς γραμματικοῖς καὶ ῥήτορσι κοινά.

τῶν παρὰ τοῖς Ἀττικοῖς συγγραφεῦσιν ὀνομάτων τεσσαράκοντα ὀκτώ: ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡ' ΕΥΠΟΛΙΔΙ ΠΟΛΙΤΙΚΩΝ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ τρία: ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡ' ἈΡΙΣΤΟΦΑΝΕΙ ΠΟΛΙΤΙΚΩΝ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ πέντε: ΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑ ΚΡΑΤΙΝῶ ΠΟΛΙΤΙΚΩΝ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ δύο: ΤΩΝ ἸΔΙΩΝ ΚΩΜΙΚΩΝ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ ΠΑΡΑΔΕΙΓΜΑΤΑ ἔν: Εἰ ΧΡΗΣΙΜΟΝ ἈΝΑΓΝΩΣΜΑ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΑΙΔΕΥΟΜΕΝΟΙΣ ἢ ΠΑΛΑΙΑ ΚΩΜΩΔΙΑ: ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΥΣ ἘΠΙΤΙΜΩΝΤΑΣ ΤΟΙΣ ΣΟΛΟΙΚΙΖΟΥΣΙ Τῆ ΦΩΝῆ ἕξ: ἈΤΤΙΚΩΝ ΠΑΡΑΣΗΜΟΣ ἔν: ΠΕΡΙ ΣΑΦΗΝΕΙΑΣ ΚΑΙ ἈΣΑΦΕΙΑΣ: Εἰ ΔΥΝΑΤΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΕἶΝΑΙ ΚΡΙΤΙΚΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΓΡΑΜΜΑΤΙΚΟΣ ἔν.

---

ἀνάγνωσμα, τό: a reading

Ἀριστοφάνης, ὁ: Aristophanes

ἀσάφεια: indistinctness, obscurity

Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν: Attic, Athenian

γραμματικός, ὁ: a grammarian

ἐπιτιμάω: to criticize

Εὐπόλις, ὁ: Eupolis

Κρατίνος, ὁ: Cratinus

κριτικός, ὁ: literary critic

κωμικός, -ή, -όν: comic

κωμῶδία, ἡ: a comedy

ὄνομα, τό: name, word

παιδεύω: to educate

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old

παράδειγμα, -ατος, τό: example

παράσημος, -ον: inauthentic

πολιτικός, -ή, -όν: political

σαφήνεια, ἡ: distinctness, perspicuity

σολοικίζω: to commit a solecism

συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: prose writer

τεσσαράκοντα: forty

φωνή, ἡ: a sound, speech

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful

---

τῶν ... ὀνομάτων: 48 (books) of words

συγγραφεῦσιν: dat. pl., "among Attic prose writers"

Εὐπόλιδι: Eupolis (446-411 BCE), a poet of, "old comedy," which was famous for its political criticism

Ἀριστοφάνει: Aristophanes (466-386 BCE), only poet of old comedy whose works have survived

Κρατίνῳ: Cratinus (519-422), a famous poet of, "old comedy"

ἰδίων κωμικῶν: "of words specific to the comic poets"

ἀνάγνωσμα: pred. nom., "whether comedy is a useful reading"

παιδευομένοις: pr. part. pas. dat., "for those being educated"

ἐπιτιμώντας: pr. part., "those criticizing"

σολοικίζουσι: pr. part. dat. after ἐπιτιμώντας, "criticizing those who use solecisms in speech"

κριτικὸς καὶ γραμματικός: pred., "can be a literary critic and a grammarian"



ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ  
ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΑΞΕΩΣ ΤΩΝ ΙΔΙΩΝ ΒΙΒΛΙΩΝ

Galen's  
*On the Order of My Own Books*





## ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΑΞΕΩΣ ΤΩΝ ΙΔΙΩΝ ΒΙΒΛΙΩΝ

*Galen reflects on the need for a handbook to explain the order of his books.*

Καλῶς μοι δοκεῖς, ὦ Εὐγενιανέ, γενέσθαι τι βιβλίον ἡξι-  
ωκέναι τὴν τάξιν τῶν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ γεγραμμένων ἐξηγούμενον: οὔτε  
γὰρ εἰς αὐτῶν ἀπάντων ὁ σκοπὸς οὔτε δύναμις οὔτ' ἐπαγγελία.  
τὰ μὲν γὰρ φίλων, ὡς οἶσθα, δεηθέντων ἐγράφη τῆς ἐκείνων  
μόνον ἕξεως στοχαζόμενα, τινὰ δὲ μειρακίους εἰσαγομένοις  
ὑπηγορεύθη, σκοπὸν ἐπ' οὐδετέρων ἔχοντός μου διαδοθῆναι

---

ἀξιώω: to request  
βιβλίον, τό: a paper, scroll, letter  
γράφω: to write  
δέομαι: to ask  
διαδίδωμι: to distribute  
δοκέω: to seem (+ *inf.*)  
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, might  
εἰς, μία, ἕν: one  
εἰσάγω: to introduce  
ἐξηγέομαι: to explain

ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: state of mind  
ἐπαγγελία, ἡ: subject matter  
καλός, -ή, ὄν: good  
μειράκιον, τό: a boy  
οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: neither of the two  
σκοπός, ὁ: purpose  
στοχάζομαι: to aim or shoot at  
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging  
ὑπαγορεύω: to dictate

---

καλῶς: adv. with ἡξιωκέναι, “to have asked *well*”

Εὐγενιανε: the addressee of this and other works by Galen, but unknown otherwise

γενέσθαι: ao. inf. after ἡξιωκέναι, “asked that some book *be*”

ἡξιωκέναι: perf. inf. of ἀξιώω complementing δοκεῖς, “you seem *to have asked*”

γεγραμμένων: perf. part. gen. pl., “of the things written”

ἐξηγούμενον: pr. part. agreeing with βιβλίον, “a book *explaining*”

εἰς: nom. pred., “the purpose is not *one*”

φίλων δεηθέντων: ao. pas. part. of δέομαι in gen. abs., “friends having asked”

ἐγράφη: ao. pas., “some *were written*”

τῆς ... ἕξεως: gen. after στοχαζόμενα, “aimed at *their state of mind*”

στοχαζόμενα: pr. pas. part., “some books *being aimed at*” + gen.

τινὰ δὲ: “while other (books)”

εἰσαγομένοις: pr. part., “for youths *who were beginning*”

ὑπηγορεύθη: ao. pas. of ὑπο-ἀγορεύω, “others *were dictated for*” + dat.

ἐπ' οὐδετέρων: “in neither of the two cases”

ἔχοντός: pr. part. in gen. abs., “me *having* the purpose”

διαδοθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. in implied ind. st., “the purpose *that they would be distributed*”

τοῖς ἀνθρώποις αὐτὰ φυλαχθῆναί τε τῷ μετ' ἐμὲ χρόνῳ διὰ  
τὸ θεάσασθαι με καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν γεγραμμένων  
βιβλίων ὀλίγους πάνυ τῶν ἀνθρώπων αἰσθανομένους.

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, understand

ἔμπροσθεν: before, in front

θεάομαι: to look on, see

πάνυ: altogether, entirely

φυλάττω: to guard, preserve

φυλαχθῆναί: ao. pas. part. of φυλάττω, also in ind. st., “that they would be preserved”

τῷ χρόνῳ: dat., “in the time after me”

τὸ θεάσασθαι: ao. inf. art., “because of me *having seen*”

γεγραμμένων: perf. part. gen. after αἰσθανομένους, “understand books *written*”

αἰσθανομένους: pr. part. acc. agreeing with ὀλίγους in ind. st. after θεάσασθαι, “that few men *understand*”

### Indirect Statement

The term indirect statement (ind. st.) is used in our commentary not only for reported speech, but other complements of verbs of perception, belief, etc.

1. Verbs of saying can take ὅτι or ὡς plus the indicative to express indirect statement:

εἴρηται τοῖς παλαιοῖς ὡς εἰς μὲν τὰς πράξεις οὐδὲν ἐπιστήμης ἀπολείπεται:  
“It has been said by the ancients that nothing of knowledge with respect to actions is left behind.”

When the main verb is a past tense, the indicative in indirect statement can be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative.

τὴν πόλιν ἐπλήρωσαν τῆς μοχθηρᾶς φήμης, ὡς ... γράψαμι: “They filled the city with the rumor that I had written.” (for ὡς ... ἔγραψα)

2. Verbs of knowing, perceiving, hearing or showing take the accusative + participle construction.

διὰ τὸ θεάσασθαι με καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν γεγραμμένων βιβλίων ὀλίγους πάνυ τῶν ἀνθρώπων αἰσθανομένους: “because I saw that few men understood the books written previously”

εὕρισκω δὴ καὶ σύμπαντα κατορθούμενα: “I find that all things are successful”

δείξας δημοσίᾳ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις ἑμαυτὸν μὲν οὐδὲν ἐψευσμένον: “having demonstrated publicly in the course of many days that I had not falsified anything.”

3. Verbs of thinking, believing and saying can take the accusative plus infinitive construction.

ἀλλά τις ἴσως αὐτῶν ἐρεῖ ... τὴν τόλμαν ἐν ἐμοὶ μᾶλλον εἶναι. “But perhaps some will say that the arrogance is in me.”

φησι ψεύδεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. “He claims that the man lies.”

θαυμάζουσι γοῦν ἄλλος ἄλλον ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων οὔτε τὰ αὐτῶν μεμαθηκότες οὔτε ἐπιστήμην ἀσκήσαντες ἀποδεικτικὴν, ἣ διακρίναι δυνήσονται τοὺς ψευδεῖς λόγους τῶν ἀληθῶν, ἀλλ' ἔνιοι μὲν ὅτι πατέρας ἔσχον ἦτοι γ' ἐμπειρικούς ἢ δογματικούς ἢ μεθοδικούς, ἔνιοι δ' ὅτι διδασκάλους, ἄλλοι δ' ὅτι φίλους ἢ διότι κατὰ τὴν πόλιν αὐτῶν ἐθαυμάσθη τις ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς αἰρέσεως. οὕτω δὲ καὶ πὶ τῶν φιλοσοφίας αἰρέσεων ἄλλος κατ' ἄλλην αἰτίαν ἦτοι Πλατωνικὸς ἢ Περιπατητικὸς ἢ Στωικὸς ἢ Ἐπικούρειος ἐγένετο, νυνὶ δ' ἀφ' οὗ

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause

αἵρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a sect

ἀληθής, -ές: unconcealed, true

ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: demonstrative, exact

ἀσκέω: to train, practice

γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way

διακρίνω: to distinguish

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

διότι: for the reason that, since

δογματικός, -ή, -όν: dogmatic

ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν: empirical

ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some

Ἐπικούρειος, -ον: Epicurean

ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: understanding, knowledge

ἦτοι ... ἦ: either ... or

θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be astonished

ιατρός, ὁ: a physician, doctor

μεθοδικός, -ή, -όν: methodic

νυνὶ: now, at this moment

πατήρ, ὁ: a father

Περιπατητικός, -ή, -όν: Peripatetic

Πλατωνικός, -η, -ον: Platonic

πόλις, ἡ: a city

Στωικός, -η, -ον: Stoic

ψευδής, -ές: lying, false

ἄλλος ἄλλον: "one admires another"

τὰ αὐτῶν: "their (doctrines)"

μεμαθηκότες: perf. part. of **μανθάνω**, "neither *having learned*"

ἀσκήσαντες: ao. part., "nor *having practiced*"

ἣ: rel. pron. dat. of means, "the method *by which*"

διακρίναι: ao. inf. compl. **δυνήσονται**, "they will be able *to distinguish*"

τῶν ἀληθῶν: gen. of separation, "false arguments *from true*"

ἔσχον: ao. of **ἔχω**, "because *they had* fathers"

ἦτοι γε ... ἦ: "either X, for example, ... or Y"

ἐμπειρικούς: pred., "who were *Empirics*" i.e. of the Empiric sect

ὅτι διδασκάλους (sc. **ἔσχον**): "others because (they had) teachers"

ἐθαυμάσθη: ao. pas., "because someone *was wondered at*" i.e. was famous

καὶ πὶ (=καὶ ἐπὶ), "also among" + gen.

Πλατωνικός: pred., "someone became *a Platonist*"

ἀφ' οὗ: "from which (state of affairs)"

καὶ διαδοχαὶ τῶν αἰρέσεών εἰσιν, οὐκ ὀλίγοι κατὰ τήνδε τὴν πρόφασιν ἀναγορεύουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς αἰρέσεως, ὅθεν ἀνατρέφονται, μάλισθ' ὅταν ἀπορώσιν ἀφορμῆς ἐτέρας βίου.

*The importance of logical demonstration in the pursuit of the truth*

ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ πεπεικῶς ἑμαυτόν, ὡς οὐδ' ἂν ὑπὸ τῶν Μουσῶν αὐτῶν γραφῆ τι βιβλίον, ἐντιμότερον ἔσται τοῦτο τῶν τοῖς ἀμαθεστάτοις γεγραμμένων, οὐκ ὠρέχθην οὐδεπώ-

ἀμαθής, -ές: unlearned, ignorant  
ἀναγορεύω: to proclaim publicly  
ἀνατρέφω: to educate  
ἀπορέω: to be at a loss for (+ *gen.*)  
ἀφορμή, ἡ: a starting-point  
διαδοχή, ἡ: a successor

ἐντιμος, -η, -ον: in honour, honoured  
Μοῦσα, -ης, ἡ: a Muse  
οὐδεπώποτε: nor yet at any time  
ὀρέγω: to reach out for  
πείθω: to persuade  
πρόφασις, -εως, ἡ: a pretext

οὐκ ὀλίγοι: “not a few” i.e. many

ὅθεν: rel. pron., “the sect *whence*”

ὅταν ἀπορώσιν: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “when(ever) they are at a loss for” + gen.

πεπεικῶς: perf. part. of πείθω, “*having persuaded myself*”

ἂν ... γραφῆ: ao. subj. pas. in fut. more vivid protasis, “if a book is written”

οὐδ' ... ἔσται: fut. more vivid apodosis, “this *will not be* more honored”

τοῖς ἀμαθεστάτοις: dat. of agent, “by the most ignorant people”

τῶν ... γεγραμμένων: perf. part. gen. of comp. after ἐντιμότερον, “more honored *than those written*”

ὠρέχθην: ao. pas. of ὀρέγω, “nor did I seek”

### General Conditions and General Clauses

A present general condition has **ἐάν** (Attic **ἤν**) + subj. in the protasis; present indicative in the apodosis.

**κἂν τοῦτο ποιῶμεν, οὐδὲν κωλύει.** “If we do this, nothing prevents us.

However, Galen sometimes uses the optative in the protasis of such conditions, especially when the premise is unlikely to be fulfilled:

**εἴ τις αἱμορραγίαν ἢ ἰδρώα προείποι, γόητά τε καὶ παραδοξολόγον ἀποκαλοῦσι.** “If anyone ever does predict a hemorrhage, they disparage him as a wizard.”

A general or indefinite temporal clause in the present has a similar form, with **ὅταν** or **ἐπειδὴν** (whenever) instead of **ἐάν**.

**ἀναγορεύουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ... μάλισθ' ὅταν ἀπορώσιν.** “They proclaim themselves ... especially when they are at a loss.”

A general relative clause also has a similar form:

**ὅστις ἂν ἄριστος ἰατρὸς ᾖ, πάντως οὗτός ἐστι καὶ φιλόσοφος.** “Whoever is the best doctor, in every way this one is also a philosopher.”

ποτε τῶν ἐμῶν ὑπομνημάτων οὐδὲν ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις εἶναι:  
 διαδοθέντων δ' εἰς πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἄκοντος ἐμοῦ, καθάπερ  
 οἴσθα, πρὸς τὸ διδόναι τι τοῦ λοιποῦ τοῖς φίλοις ὑπόμνημα  
 λίαν ὀκνηρῶς ἔσχον, ἠναγκάσθην δὲ διὰ ταῦτα καὶ βιβλίον  
 τι γράψαι περὶ τῆς ἀρίστης αἰρέσεως, οὐ τοιοῦτον οἶον πολ-  
 λοι τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἔγραψαν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων ὀνο-  
 μασι τὴν ἑαυτῶν αἴρεσιν ἐπαινοῦντες, ἀλλὰ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτὴν  
 μόνον ἐνδεικνύμενος, ἧ τις ἂν χρώμενος τὴν ἀρίστην αἴρεσιν  
 συστήσαιτο ἢ κατ' ἰατρικὴν ἢ τιν' ἄλλην τέχνην. εἴρηται  
 δ' ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ δέδεικται τὸ λεγόμενον ὀλίγον ἔμπροσθεν,

ἀέκων, -ουσα, -ον: unwilling

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel

δείκνυμι: to show, prove

διαδίδωμι: to distribute

ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine

ἔμπροσθεν: before

ἐνδείκνυμι: to demonstrate

ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend

ιατρικός, -ή, -όν: of healing

καθάπερ: as, just as

λίαν: very, exceedingly

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

ὁδός, ἧ: a way, path

ὀκνηρός, -ά, -όν: shrinking, anxious

ὀνομασί: by name

συνίστημι: to set together, establish

τέχνη, ἧ: art, skill

ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό: a commentary

χράομαι: to use

οὐδὲν ... εἶναι: acc. + inf. after ὠρέεσθαι, "seek *that any* of my books *would be*"

διαδοθέντων ... αὐτῶν: ao. part. pas. in gen. abs., "these having been distributed"

ἄκοντος ἐμοῦ: gen. abs., "with me unwilling"

τὸ διδόναι: pr. inf. art., "about *giving*"

τι τοῦ λοιποῦ: "any of the rest"

τοῖς φίλοις: dat. ind. obj. after διδόναι, "giving *to friends*"

ὀκνηρῶς ἔσχον: ao. of ἔχω + adv., "I was anxious"

ἠναγκάσθην: ao. pas. of ἀναγκάζω, "I was compelled" + inf.

οὐ τοιοῦτον οἶον: "not such a one as"

ἔγραψαν: ao., "many *had written*"

ἧ: rel. pron. dat. after χρώμενος, "the way, using *which*"

χρώμενος: pr. part. representing a fut. less vivid protasis, (= εἰ χραίτο), "if someone were to use"

ἂν ... συστήσαιτο: ao. opt. of συν-ἵστημι in fut. less vivid apodosis, "he might establish"

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, "it was said"

δέδεικται: perf. of δείκνυμι, "it was shown"

τὸ λεγόμενον: subj. of εἴρηται and δέδεικται, "the thing spoken earlier"

ὡς ἀποδείξεως ἐπιστήμονα χρή γεγονέναι πρότερον, ὅστις ἂν μέλλῃ κριτῆς ὀρθὸς ἔσεσθαι τῶν αἰρέσεων. οὐκ ἄρκεῖ δ' οὐδὲ τοῦτο μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πάθους ἀπηλλάχθαι χρή, καθ' ὃ φιλοῦντες ἢ μισοῦντες τὰς αἰρέσεις οἱ πολλοὶ τυφλώττουσι

ἀπαλλάττω: to set free, release	ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: correct, reliable
ἀπόδειξις, -εως, ἡ: demonstration, proof	πάθος, τό: affection
ἀρκέω: to ward off, keep off	πρότερον: previously
ἐπιστήμων, -ον: knowledgeable about (+ gen.)	τυφλώττω: to be blind
κριτής, -οῦ, ὁ: a decider, critic	φιλέω: to love
μέλλω: to intend to, to be about to (+ inf.)	χρή: it is necessary
μισέω: to hate	

ὡς ... χρή γεγονέναι: appositional clause to τὸ λεγόμενον, “namely, that it is necessary to have become”

ἂν μέλλῃ: pr. subj. in gen. rel. cl., “whoever is about to” + fut. inf.

ἔσεσθαι: fut. inf. of εἶμι after μέλλῃ

ἀπηλλάχθαι: ao. inf. pas. of ἀπο-ἀλλάττω after χρή, “it is necessary to be set free from, “ + gen.

καθ' ὃ: rel. pron., “the affection according to which”

φιλοῦντες ἢ μισοῦντες: supplemental part. with τυφλώττουσι, “they are blind in loving and hating”

### Future Conditions

The future less vivid condition indicates a future action as a mere possibility; the future more vivid condition indicates a future action as a probability.

More vivid: ἔάν (Attic contraction = ἦν or ἂν) plus subjunctive in the protasis, future indicative or equivalent in the apodosis: in English, “if he does... then he will...”

ἐπισημανοῦμαι δὲ ταῦτα καὶ διὰ τῶν ἐξῆς, ἔάν που γένηται χρεία.

“I will explain more about these things in order, if there is any need.

Less vivid: εἰ plus optative in the protasis, ἂν plus the optative in the apodosis: in English, “if he were to... then he would...”

εἰ γὰρ τις ... ἐβελήσειεν ... αὐτὸς ζητῆσαι τὰληθῆς ... μόνος ἂν οὗτος ἐξεύροι τὴν ἀρίστην αἴρεσιν.

For if someone were to wish to see the truth himself ... this one alone would find the best sect.

Note the following examples of mixing forms:

ταῦτά τ' οὖν εἴ τις ἀναγιγνώσκειν ἐθέλοι πρῶτα πάντων, ὀρθῶς ποιήσει, καὶ εἰ πεισθεὶς αὐτοῖς ἀποδεικτικὸς γενέσθαι βουλευθείη ... ἔχει πραγματεῖαν τὴν ὑφ' ἡμῶν γεγραμμένην.

If someone (ever) wishes to read these first of all, he will be doing well, and if, having been persuaded by these, he wishes to become expert in logic, he has the commentary written by us.

ἀμφ' αὐτάς: εἰ γάρ τις μὴ τοῦτ' ἔχων ἐβελήσειεν ἦτοι κατὰ μέθοδον ἐπιστημονικὴν αὐτὸς ζητῆσαι τάληθές ἢ τὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰρημένα κρίναι, μόνος ἂν οὗτος ἐξεύροι τὴν ἀρίστην αἴρεσιν.

*Most doctors and philosophers eschew logical demonstration*

ἐπίστασαι δὲ καὶ σὺ τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἱατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων, ὅταν ἐξελέγχωνται, ὡς μηδὲν ἀποδεικτικὴν μέθοδον ἡσκηκότας, ἐπ' ἐναντίας ὁδοὺς ἐκτρεπομένους καὶ τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν μὴδ' εἶναι φάσκοντας ἀπόδειξιν, ἐνίους δ' οὐ μόνον ὑπάρχειν ἀπόδειξιν ἀλλὰ καὶ γινώσκεσθαι

ἀληθής, -ές: unconcealed, true	ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover
ἀμφί: concerning (+ acc.)	ἐπιστημονικός, -ή, -όν: scientific
ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: affording proof, demonstrative	ἐπίσταμαι: to know
ἀσκέω: to work curiously, form by art, fashion	ζητέω: to seek, seek for
ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose	ἦτοι ... ἦ: either ... or
ἐκτρέπω: to turn aside	κρίνω: to choose, judge
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite	μέθοδος, ἡ: a pursuit, method
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some	ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path
ἐξελέγχο: to test, refute	ὑπάρχω: to exist from the beginning
	φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

μὴ τοῦτ' ἔχων: μὴ gives the participle a conditional force, “if someone does not have this (affection)”

εἰ ... ἐβελήσειεν: ao. opt. in fut. less vivid protasis, “if someone were to wish” + inf.

αὐτὸς ζητῆσαι: ao. inf. after ἐβελήσειεν, “wish *himself* to seek”

τὰ ... εἰρημένα: perf. part. pas., “the things said”

κρίναι: ao. inf. also after ἐβελήσειεν, “wish to judge”

ἂν ... ἐξεύροι: ao. opt. in fut. less vivid aposisis, “this one *could* find”

ἐπίστασαι: 2 s., “you know”

ὅταν ἐξελέγχωνται: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever they are tested”

ὡς ... ἡσκηκότας: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἐπίστασαι, “you know *that many* have practiced”

ἐκτρεπομένους: pr. part. also after ἐπίστασαι, “you know *that they* have turned away”

τοὺς μὲν ... φάσκοντας: pr. part. also after ἐπίστασαι, “know *that some* claim”

μὴδ' εἶναι ἀπόδειξιν: ind. st. after φάσκοντας, “claiming *that logical proof* does not exist”

ἐνίους δ' οὐ (sc. φάσκοντας): “and that others (claim that)” + acc. + inf.

οὐ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καὶ: “not only ... but also”

ὑπάρχειν ... γινώσκεσθαι: pr. inf. after φάσκοντας, “that it exists ... that it is known”



φύσει πᾶσιν, ὡς μηδὲν εἰς τοῦτο μήτε μαθήσεως δεῖσθαι τινα  
 μήτ' ἀσκήσεως: οἷς πῶς ἂν ἔτι διαλέγοιτό τις εἰς τοσοῦτον  
 ἐμπληξίας ἤκουσιν; ἀλλὰ τις ἴσως αὐτῶν ἐρεῖ -- καὶ γὰρ  
 τολμηρότατοί πῶς εἰσι περὶ ὧν οὐκ ἴσασιν ἀποφαίνεσθαι --  
 τὴν τόλμαν ἐν ἐμοὶ μᾶλλον εἶναι. ἴν' οὖν μήτ' αὐτὸς ἀκούω  
 ταῦτα μήτε πρὸς ἑτέρους ἀναγκάζωμαι λέγειν, ἐγνώκειν  
 μηδὲν ἐκδιδόναι βιβλίον.

*A starting point for reading the works of Galen.*

ἀλλὰ τῶν γε τοῖς φίλοις δοθέντων ἐκπεσόντων εἰς πολ-  
 λούς, ἐγράφη μὲν ἐξ ἀνάγκης δι' ἐκεῖνα καὶ τὸ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΡΙ-

---

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel	ἵνα: in order to (+ subj.)
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity	ἴσως: adv. perhaps
ἀποφαίνομαι: to display opinions	μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning
ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: exercise, practice, training	μήτε ... μήτε: neither ... nor
δέομαι: to need	πῶς: in any way, at all
διαλέγομαι: to converse	πῶς: how?
ἐκδίδωμι: to publish	τολμηρός, -ά, -όν: hardihood
ἐκπίπτω: to fall into	τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: such a one
ἐμπληξία, ἡ: amazement, stupidity	τόλμα, -ης, ἡ: courage, arrogance
ἦκω: to have come to, arrive	φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural power

---

φύσει: dat. of manner, "that it is known *naturally*"

ὡς ... δεῖσθαι: pr. inf. in res. cl., "so that no one needs" + gen.

μηδὲν: adverbial acc, "not at all"

οἷς: rel. pron. dat., "to whom" i.e. to people who believe such things

πῶς ἂν διαλέγοιτο: pot. opt., "how could anyone converse?"

ἤκουσιν: pr. part. dat. pl. agreeing with οἷς, "to whom, *arriving* to such a degree of stupidity"

ἐρεῖ: fut. of λέγω, "someone *will say*"

περὶ ὧν: the rel. is gen. by attraction, "about (things) which"

ἀποφαίνεσθαι: pr. inf. exep. after τολμηρότατοί, "very arrogant to *give opinions*"

τὴν τόλμαν ... εἶναι: ind. st. after ἐρεῖ, "say *that the arrogance is in me*"

ἵνα ... ἀκούω: pr. subj. in purpose clause, "in order not to hear"

ἵνα ... ἀναγκάζωμαι: pr. subj. in purpose clause, "in order not to be compelled" + inf.

ἐγνώκειν: plupf., "I *decided*" + inf.

τῶν ... δοθέντων: ao. part. pas. in gen. abs., "those (books) having been given to" + dat.

ἐκπεσόντων: ao. part. also in gen. abs., "those (books) having fallen into"

εἰς πολλούς: i.e. into the hands of many

ἐγράφη: ao. pas., "On the Best Sect *was written*"

ΣΤΗΣ ΑΙΡΕΣΕΩΣ, εἴρηται δ' ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τῆς γραφῆς αἰτία.  
ταῦτά τ' οὖν εἴ τις ἀναγινώσκειν ἐθέλοι πρῶτα πάντων,  
ὀρθῶς ποιήσει, καὶ εἰ πεισθεὶς αὐτοῖς ἀποδεικτικὸς γενέσθαι  
βουληθείη, πρὶν ἐπὶ τὴν μάθησίν τε καὶ κρίσιν ἦκειν ἀπασῶν  
τῶν αἰρέσεων, ἔχει πραγματείαν τὴν ὑφ' ἡμῶν γεγραμμένην,  
τὴν ΠΕΡΙ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ, ἧς ἐὰν μὴ μόνον μάθη τὰς μεθόδους  
ἀλλὰ καὶ γυμνάσθαι κατ' αὐτάς, ἐπὶ πάσης ὕλης πραγμάτων  
ἐξευρήσει τὴν ἀλήθειαν, ἐὰν γ' ἐραστὴς ὑπάρχη καὶ μὴ κατὰ  
πάθος ἄλογον αἰρήται τι, καθάπερ οἱ περὶ τὰς διαφορὰς

---

αἰρέομαι: to take for oneself, choose  
ἄλογος, -ον: irrational  
ἀναγινώσκω: to read  
ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: expert in logic  
βούλομαι: to will, wish, be willing  
γυμνάζω: to train, exercise  
διαφορά, ἡ: difference, distinction  
ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose  
ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover  
ἐραστής, -οῦ, ὁ: a lover  
ἦκω: to have come to

καθάπερ: just as  
κρίσις, ἡ: a power of distinguishing  
μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning  
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, correct  
πάθος, -εως, τό: an affection  
πείθω: to prevail upon, persuade  
πραγματεία, ἡ: a major work  
πρᾶγμα, τό: a deed, matter  
πρὶν: before (+ *inf.*)  
ὑπάρχω: to become  
ὕλη, ἡ: subject matter

---

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, “the cause *was stated*”  
εἴ τις ... ἐθέλοι: ao. opt. in pr. gen. protasis, “if someone wishes to” + *inf.*  
ποιήσει: fut. ind. in fut. more vivid apodosis, “he will do well”  
πεισθεὶς: ao. part. pas. circum., “having been persuaded”  
εἰ ... βουληθείη: ao. opt. pas. in pr. gen. protasis, “if someone wishes to” + *inf.*  
πρὶν ... ἦκειν: pr. *inf.*, “before coming to”  
τὴν ... γεγραμμένην: perf. part. attrib., “the one *written* by us”  
τὴν περὶ ἀποδείξεως: “the *Logical Demonstrations*”  
ἧς: rel. pron. gen. referring to *πραγματείας*, “the methods *of which*”  
ἐὰν ... μάθη: ao. subj. in fut. more vivid protasis, “if he learns”  
μὴ μόνον ... ἀλλὰ καὶ: “not only ... but also”  
ἐὰν ... γυμνάσθαι: ao. subj. also in fut. more vivid protasis, “if he also practices”  
πάσης ὕλης: of the matters *of any subject*”  
ἐξευρήσει: fut. in fut. more vivid apodosis, “he will find”  
ἐὰν ... ὑπάρχη: pr. subj. in additional protasis, “*if he becomes* a lover”  
μὴ ... αἰρήται: pr. subj. in additional protasis, “*if he does not choose* anything”  
καθάπερ οἱ ... ἐσπουδακότες: perf. part., “like those who have become zealous”

τῶν χρωμάτων ἐν ταῖς ἵπποδρομίαις ἐσπουδακότες: ὁ δ' αὐτὸς οὗτος ἐπὶ τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν εἰρημένοις παραγενόμενος ἐξευρήσει τὰ τ' ἀληθῶς ἄλλοις ἐγνωσμένα καὶ ψευδῶς ὑπειλημμένα.

*The difference between truth and correct opinion*

II. Μία μὲν οὖν ἦδε τῶν ἡμετέρων ὑπομνημάτων ἐστὶν ἀρχὴ τῆς ἀναγνώσεως ἐκείνοις τῶν ἀνδρῶν, ὅσοι καὶ φύσει συνετοὶ καὶ ἀληθείας ἐταῖροι: χωρὶς δὲ ταύτης ἐάν τις ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἢ πεπειραμένος ἐπὶ τε τοῦ βίου παντὸς καὶ κατὰ τὰ τῆς τέχνης ἔργα, ὥστε πεπεῖσθαι περὶ μὲν τοῦ τρόπου τῆς ψυχῆς

ἀληθεία, ἡ: truth	πειράω: to attempt, test
ἀνάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: reading, studying	πειθῶ: to prevail upon, persuade
ἀνὴρ, ὁ: a man	σπουδάζω: to be eager
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin, first cause	συνετός, -ή, -όν: intelligent, sagacious, wise
βίος, ὁ: life	τρόπος, ὁ: a course, way, manner
ἔμπροσθεν: before	ὑπολαμβάνω: to take up, understand
ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover	φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, natural quality
ἔργον, τό: work	χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: color
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate	χωρίς: apart from (+ <i>gen.</i> )
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our	ψευδής, -ές: lying, false
ἵπποδρομία, ἡ: a chariot race	ψυχή, ἡ: soul
παραγίνομαι: to be near	

τῶν χρωμάτων: “the colors” that distinguished different teams in chariot racing  
ὁ δ' αὐτὸς οὗτος: “but this same person” i.e. the person who followed the course of study outlined above

παραγενόμενος: ao. part., “having come upon” + ἐπὶ + dat.

τοῖς ... εἰρημένοις: perf. part. of λέγω, “upon *the things said* previously”

ἐξευρήσει: fut., “he will find out”

τὰ ... ἐγνωσμένα: perf. part., “*the things known* truly”

ὑπειλημμένα: perf. part. of ὑπο-λαμβάνω, “the things taken up”

μία ... ἀρχή: pred., “this is *one beginning point*”

ἐκείνοις ... ὅσοι: for those ... who”

ἐάν τις ... ἢ πεπειραμένος: perf. periphrastic subj. in fut. more vivid protasis, “if anyone has tested” + gen.

ὥστε πεπεῖσθαι: perf. inf. in res. cl., “so that he is persuaded”

ὅτι χωρὶς ἔχθρας ἢ φιλονεικίας ἢ φιλίας ἀλόγου πρὸς αἵρεσίν τινα πάντα πράττομεν αἰεί, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἔργων τῶν κατὰ τὴν τέχνην ὅπως μαρτυρεῖ τῇ τῶν δογμάτων ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ χωρὶς τῆς ἀποδεικτικῆς θεωρίας οὗτος ὠφελείσθαι δυνήσεται πρὸς τῶν ἡμετέρων ὑπομνημάτων, οὐ κατ' ἐπιστήμην ἀκριβῆ τῶν πραγμάτων (τοῦτο γὰρ ὑπάρχει μόνοις τοῖς ἀποδεικτικοῖς) ἀλλὰ κατὰ δόξαν ὀρθήν, ὑπὲρ ἧς εἰκότως εἴρηται τοῖς παλαιοῖς ὡς εἰς μὲν τὰς πράξεις οὐδὲν ἐπιστήμης ἀπολείπεται, τὸ μόνιμον δ' αὐτῇ καὶ βέβαιον οὐ πρόσεστιν.

αἰεί: always

ἀκριβῆς, -ές: exact, accurate

ἄλογος, -ον: irrational

ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: demonstrative, practiced in logical demonstration

ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind

βέβαιον, τό: certainty

δόγμα, -ατος, τό: an opinion, dogma

δόξα, ἡ: an opinion, notion

εἰκότως: suitably

ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: understanding, knowledge

ἔχθρα, ἡ: hatred, enmity

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

θεωρία, ἡ: a theory, science

μαρτυρέω: to bear witness

μόνιμον, τό: stability

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years

πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό: matter

πρᾶξις, -εως, ἡ: a doing, transaction, action

πρόσεμι: to be present

ὑπάρχω: to become, happens to (+ *dat.*)

φιλία, ἡ: affection

φιλονεικία, ἡ: competitiveness

χωρίς: apart from (+ *gen.*)

ὠφελέω: to help, aid, assist

ὅτι ... πράττομεν: noun cl. after πεπεισθαι, "persuaded *that we act*"

πρὸς αἵρεσίν τινα: "towards any sect"

ὅπως μαρτυρεῖ: fut. in noun cl. also after πεπεισθαι, "persuaded *that the facts witness to*" + *dat.*

καὶ χωρὶς: "even without" + *gen.*

ὠφελείσθαι: pr. pas. inf. complementing δυνήσεται, "to be helped"

δυνήσεται: fut. in fut. more vivid apodosis, "this one *will be able to*" + *inf.*

ἐπιστήμην ἀκριβῆ ... δόξαν ὀρθήν: "not *accurate knowledge* ... but *correct opinion*," a distinction made by Plato and other, "ancients"

ὑπὲρ ἧς: "about which," referring to correct opinion

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, "it was said"

τοῖς παλαιοῖς: *dat.* of agent, "by the ancient (philosophers)"

ὡς ... ἀπολείπεται: ind. st. after εἴρηται, "that nothing of knowledge *is left behind*"

εἰς μὲν τὰς πράξεις: "with respect to actions" i.e. practical matters

αὐτῇ: *dat.* with πρόσεστιν, "but stability is not also present *to it*" i.e. correct opinion

*Introductory books are for those satisfied with correct opinion*

ἀναγνώσεται τοιγαροῦν οὗτος ἀπάντων πρῶτα τὰ τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις γεγραμμένα, τό τε περὶ τῶν αἰρέσεων, ὃ δὴ καὶ κατὰ τήνδε τὴν λέξιν ἐπιγράφεται ΠΕΡΙ ΑἰΡΕΣΕΩΝ τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις καὶ τὸ περὶ τῶν σφυγμῶν, ὃ δὴ καὶ αὐτὸ παραπλησίως ἐπιγράφεται ΠΕΡΙ ΣΦΥΓΜΩΝ τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις, καὶ τρίτον, ὃ ΠΕΡΙ ὈΣΤΩΝ τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις ἐπιγράφεται, τῆς ἀνατομικῆς πραγματείας ὑπάρχον πρῶτον, ἣν δὴ καὶ πᾶσαν εἴ τις βούλοιτο διελθεῖν, ἐπὶ τῆν ΤΩΝ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΙΚΩΝ ἘΓΧΕΙΡΗΣΕΩΝ ἡκέτω πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων: αὕτη γὰρ διδάσκει τὰ φαινόμενα μόρια κατὰ τὰς ἀνατομὰς

ἀνατομή, ἡ: dissection

ἀνατομικός, -ή, -όν: relating to anatomy

βούλομαι: to will, wish (+ *inf.*)

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

ἐγχείρησις, -εως, ἡ: undertaking, procedure

εἰσάγω: to introduce

ἐπιγράφω: to entitle

ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here

λέξις, -εως, ἡ: a speaking

μόριον, τό: a part, section

ὀστέον, τό: bone

παραπλησίως: similarly

σφυγμός, ὁ: pulse

τοιγαροῦν: so for this very reason

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

φαίνω: to bring to light, make to appear

ἀναγνώσεται: fut., “he will read”

τοῖς εἰσαγομένοις: pr. part. dat. of advantage, “for those being introduced” i.e. for beginners

ὃ δὴ: “which in fact”

κατὰ τήνδε τὴν λέξιν: “according to this very kind of speaking”

ἐπιγράφεται: perf., “has been titled”

ὑπάρχον: pr. part. n. s., “being the first beginning”

ἣν δὴ: “which very thing” i.e. the anatomical treatise

καὶ πᾶσαν: “also all (of the anatomical treatise)”

εἴ τις βούλοιτο: pr. opt. in pr. gen. protasis, “if someone wishes to” + *inf.*

διελθεῖν: ao. *inf.* of δια-έρχομαι, “to go through”

τὴν (sc. πραγματείαν) τῶν ἀνατομικῶν ἐγχειρήσεων: “the (treatise) of anatomical procedures”

ἡκέτω: pr. imper. 3. s., “let him advance to”

φαινόμενα: pr. part. attrib., “the parts that appear”

ὡς ἔχει μεγέθους τε καὶ θέσεως καὶ διαπλάσεως καὶ πλοκῆς καὶ τῆς πρὸς ἄλληλα κοινωνίας. ὁ δ' ἐν τῇ τούτων θέα κατὰ τὰς ἀνατομὰς γυμνασάμενος ἐξῆς αὐτῶν τὰς ἐνεργείας μαθήσεται, τὰς μὲν φυσικὰς ἐν τρισὶν ὑπομνήμασι γεγραμμένας, ἃ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΣΙΚΩΝ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΝ ἐπιγέγραπται, τὰς ψυχικὰς δ' ὀνομαζόμενας ἐν ἄλλοις πλείοσιν, ὧν προηγείται τό τε ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἘΠΙ ΤΩΝ ΤΕΘΝΕΩΤΩΝ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΗΣ καὶ δύο ἐφεξῆς τῶδε, τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἘΠΙ ΤΩΝ ΖΩΝΤΩΝ, καὶ δύο ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ἄλλα, τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΙΚΗΣ ΔΙΑΦΩΝΙΑΣ: ἐφεξῆς δὲ τούτοις ἐστὶ τρία μὲν ΠΕΡΙ ΘΩΡΑΚΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΝΕΥΜΟΝΟΣ ΚΙΝΗΣΕΩΣ, δύο δὲ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΤΗΣ ἈΝΑΠΝΟΗΣ ΑΙΤΙΩΝ καὶ τούτων ἐφεξῆς τέτταρα ΠΕΡΙ ΦΩΝΗΣ: ἐκ ταύτου δὲ γένους ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΜΥΩΝ

αἶτια, ἡ: cause

ἀλλήλων: one another

ἀναπνοή, ἡ: breathing

γένος, -ους, τό: category, group

γυμνάζω: to train, practice

διαφωνία, ἡ: discord, disagreement

διάπλασις, -εως, ἡ: construction

ἐνεργεία, ἡ: action, operation

ἐξῆς: next in order

ἐπιγράφω: to entitle

ἐφεξῆς: in order after (+ *dat.*)

ζάω: to live

θέα, ἡ: a seeing, looking at, view

θέσις, -εως, ἡ: a placing, position

θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: chest

κίνησις, -εως, ἡ: movement, motion

κοινωνία, ἡ: association, relationship

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size

μῦς, ὁ: muscle

ὀνομάζω: to name

πλείων, -ον: more

πλοκή, ἡ: formation

πνεύμων, ὁ: lung

προηγέομαι: to be the leader

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: natural, native

φωνή, ἡ: voice

ψυχικός, -ή, -όν: of the soul or life, spiritual

ὡς ἔχει: noun cl. after *διδάσκει*, “teaches *how they are* in” + gen.

ὁ ... *γυμνασάμενος*: ao. part. attrib., “the one having practiced”

*μαθήσεται*: fut., “he will learn”

*τὰς μὲν φυσικὰς ... τὰς ψυχικὰς δέ*: attrib. phrases modifying *ἐνεργείας*, “the operations, *both natural and spiritual*”

*ἐν ἄλλοις πλείοσιν* (sc. *ὑπομνήμασι*): “in many more (commentaries)”

*ὧν*: “of which (commentaries)”

*τεθνεώτων*: perf. part. of *θνήσκω*, “the dissection *of the dead*”

*περὶ τῆς* (sc. *ἀνατομῆς*): “*about the* (dissection) of living”

*τούτων ἐφεξῆς*: “next after these” note the variation of case with *ἐφεξῆς*

*ταύτου* (= *τοῦ αὐτοῦ*): “from *the same* category”

ΚΙΝΗΣΕΩΣ. ὑπὲρ ἡγεμονικοῦ δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων, ὅσα περὶ φυσικῶν ἢ ψυχικῶν ἐνεργειῶν ζητεῖται, διὰ πολυβίβλου πραγματείας ἐδηλώσαμεν, ἦν ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἸΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ΚΑΙ ΠΛΑΤΩΝΟΣ ΔΟΓΜΑΤΩΝ ἐπιγράφομεν. ἐκ τούτου δὲ τοῦ γένους ἐστὶ τῆς θεωρίας καὶ τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΣΠΕΡΜΑΤΟΣ ἰδίᾳ γεγραμμένα καὶ προσέτι τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἸΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ἈΝΑΤΟΜΗΣ, οἷς ἅπασιν ἢ ΠΕΡΙ ΧΡΕΙΑΣ ΜΟΡΙΩΝ ἔπεται πραγματεία.

*Books on the four elements and their mixtures.*

αἱ δ' ἀρχαὶ τῆς γενέσεως ἅπασιν τοῖς οὖσιν ὕλην ἔχουσι τὰ τέτταρα στοιχεῖα, κεράννυσθαί τε πεφυκότα δι' ὄλων ἀλλήλων καὶ δρᾶν εἰς ἀλληλα: ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ ΠΕΡΙ

ἀλλήλων: one another

ἀρχή, ἡ: a principal, first cause

γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: generation

γένος, -ους, τό: genus, category

δηλώω: to show, make clear

δράω: to do

ἐνέργεια, ἡ: action, operation

ἐπιγράφω: to entitle

ἔπομαι: to follow + dat

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

ἡγεμονικός, -ή, -όν: commanding

ἰδίᾳ: specifically

κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle

κίνησις, -εως, ἡ: movement, motion

μόριον, τό: a part, portion, section

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

Πλάτων, -ωνος, ὁ: Plato

πολύβιβλος, -ον: in many books

προσέτι: in addition

σπέρμα, -ατος, τό: sperm

στοιχείον, τό: element

ὕλη, ἡ: matter

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: natural, native

φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

χρεία, ἡ: use

ψυχικός, -ή, -όν: of the soul or life, spiritual

ὑπὲρ ἡγεμονικοῦ: "about the commanding (faculty)" i.e. the source of volition and cognition

ἐδηλώσαμεν: ao., "we have clarified"

τὰ γεγραμμένα: perf. part., "those written"

αἱ δ' ἀρχαὶ τῆς γενέσεως: "the principles of generation"

ἔχουσι: pr. part. circum. dat. agreeing with τοῖς οὖσιν, itself a pr. part., "to all beings having matter"

τὰ τέτταρα στοιχεῖα: pred., "are the four basic elements"

πεφυκότα: perf. part. of φύω, agreeing with στοιχεῖα, "having been naturally formed to" + inf.

δι' ὄλων ἀλλήλων: "to be mixed with each other completely"

δρᾶν: pr. inf. also after πεφυκότα, "to act on each other"

ὑπὲρ ὧν: "about which things" i.e. the four elements

ΤΩΝ ἸΑΤΡΙΚΩΝ ὈΝΟΜΑΤΩΝ κὰν τῶ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΚΑΘ' ἹΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΗΝ ΣΤΟΙΧΕΙΩΝ ἐπιδέδεικται. καὶ αὐτὰ μὲν τὰ περὶ τῆς ἀποδείξεως τῶν στοιχείων οὐ πάντ' εἴρηται κατὰ τὸ βιβλίον ἀλλ' ὅσοις αὐτὸς Ἱπποκράτης ἐχρήσατο: πρὸς δὲ τὸ τελεώτατον τῆς ἐπιστήμης τῶν τοῦ σώματος στοιχείων ἀναλέξασθαι προσήκει τὰ τ' ἐν τῶ τρισκαιδεκάτῳ ΠΕΡΙ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ εἰρημένα καὶ κατὰ τὸ πέμπτον καὶ ἕκτον ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ἈΣΚΛΗΠΙΑΔΟΥ ΔΟΓΜΑΤΩΝ. ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τῆς τῶν καθαιρόντων φαρμάκων δυνάμεως εἴρηται μὲν τινα κὰν τῶ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΚΑΘ' ἹΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΗΝ ΣΤΟΙΧΕΙΩΝ, γέγραπται δὲ καὶ κατὰ μόνας ἐν ἑτέρῳ βιβλίῳ. τῶ δὲ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΚΑΘ' ἹΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΗΝ ΣΤΟΙΧΕΙΩΝ ἔπεται τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΝ ὑπομνήματα τρία καὶ τούτοις ἢ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ἈΠΛΩΝ ΦΑΡΜΑΚΩΝ ΔΥΝΑΜΕΩΣ πραγματεία κἀκείνῃ πάλιν ἢ ΠΕΡΙ ΣΥΝΘΕΣΕΩΣ ΦΑΡΜΑΚΩΝ. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς πρώτοις ΠΕΡΙ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΝ αἱ ἐν τοῖς ζώοις κράσεις λέγονται

ἀναλέγομαι: to read

ἀπλός, -η, -ον: simple

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to show, point out

ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: knowledge

ἔπομαι: to follow

ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal

καθαίρω: to purge

κράσις, -εως, ἡ: a mixture

ὄνομα, τό: a name

πάλιν: again

προσήκω: to be fitting to (+ *inf.*)

στοιχείον, τό: element

σύνθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a composition

τέλειος, -α, -ον: finished, complete

τρискаιδεκάτος, -η, -ον: thirteen

φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine

χράομαι: to use (+ *dat.*)

ἐπιδέδεικται: perf., “has been treated”

αὐτὰ: intensive, “the matters of the demonstrations *themselves*”

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, “are not stated completely”

ὅσοις: dat. after ἐχρήσατο, “but *whatever* Hippocrates himself used”

ἀναλέξασθαι: ao. inf. complementing προσήκει, “it is fitting *to read*”

τά ... εἰρημένα: perf. part., “the things stated”

εἴρηται μὲν τινα κὰν (=καὶ ἐν): “some things are stated also in”

κατὰ μόνας: “as a single subject,” i.e. separately

τῶ δὲ: dat. after ἔπεται

καὶ τούτοις (sc. ἔπεται): “and the treatise (follows) *these*”

κἀκείνῃ (=καὶ ἐκείνῃ): also after ἔπεται, “and the treatise on composition follows *that one*”



μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων ἐκάστης γνωρισμάτων, ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΦΑΡΜΑΚΩΝ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΣ ὁ λόγος ἐστίν. ἐάν τ' οὖν μετὰ τὰ δύο βουλευθῆ τις ἐάν τε μετὰ τὰ τρία τό τε περὶ τῆς ἀρίστης κατασκευῆς τοῦ σώματος ἀναγνῶναι καὶ τὸ περὶ τῆς εὐεξίας καὶ τὸ περὶ ἀνωμάλου δυσκρασίας, ἐν τῇ προσηκούσῃ τάξει πράξει τοῦτο. μικρὰ δ' ἐστὶ πάνυ τὰ τρία ταῦτα βιβλία φίλοις ἀξιώσασιν ὑπαγορευθέντα κἄπειτ' ἐκδοθέντα πρὸς ἐκείνων: ἐπεὶ τοι καὶ τούτων ἡ δύναμις ἐν τῇ τῶν ὑγιεινῶν πραγματεία περιέχεται, καθ' ἣν αἱ διαφοραὶ τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἡμῶν κατασκευῆς [...]

ἀνώματος, -ον: uneven, irregular  
 ἀξιώω: to think or deem worthy of  
 βούλομαι: to will, wish  
 γνώρισμα, τό: an indication, mark  
 διαφορά, ἡ: difference, distinction  
 δυσκρασία, ἡ: bad mixture  
 ἐκδίδωμι: to circulate publicly  
 ἐπεὶ: after that  
 ἔπειτα: thereupon  
 εὐεξία, ἡ: a good habit of body  
 κατασκευή, ἡ: preparation, predisposition  
 κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: a mixture

λόγος, ὁ: a account  
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little  
 πάνυ: very  
 περιέχω: to encompass, contain  
 προσήκω: to belong to, to be proper to  
 σῶμα, τό: body  
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging, order  
 τοι: let me tell you, surely, verily  
 ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy  
 ὑπαγορεύω: to dictate  
 φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine

ἐκάστης: “of each (mixture)”

περὶ ... κρᾶσεως: pred. phrase, “the account is *about the mixture*”

ἐάν ... βουλευθῆ τις: ao. pas. subj. of βούλομαι in fut. more vivid protasis, “if someone wishes to” + inf.

μετὰ τὰ δύο: “after the two (books of the *Mixtures*)”

μετὰ τὰ τρία: “after the three (books of the *Mixtures*)”

ἀναγνῶναι: ao. inf. after βουλευθῆ, “wishes to read”

προσηκούση: pr. part., “in the *proper* order”

πράξει: fut. of πράττω, in fut. more vivid apodosis, “he will do this”

ἀξιώσασιν: ao. part. dat. pl. agreeing with φίλοις, “for friends *who had requested* them”

ὑπαγορευθέντα: ao. part. pas. agreeing with βιβλία, “books *which had been dictated*”

ἐκδοθέντα: ao. part. pas. agreeing with βιβλία, “books *which had been published*”

τούτων: “the function of *these* three books”

τοῦ σώματος ἡμῶν: “of our (human) body”

[...]: There is a substantial lacuna after which Galen is talking about his commentaries on Hippocrates.

The following summary is based on the restored text of Boudon-Millot (2007):

The purpose of the treatise (i.e. *On Health*) is to show how the parts of the body must each be kept healthy, after which comes *On Therapeutic Method*. But prior to *On Health* and *On Therapeutic Method* are those mentioned above, and to them should be added *On the Differences of Diseases*, *On the Causes of Symptoms*, *On the Nature of Tumors*, *On Mass*, *On the Differences of Fevers*.

Other therapeutic works are *On Blood-letting*, *On Antecedent Causes*, *On Continuous Causes*. Works that are refutations include *Against the New Opinion on the Secretion of Urine*, *On the Beliefs of Asclepiades*, *On the Methodic Sect*.

Books on the nature of the disciplines include *On the Constitution of the Arts*, *Patrophilos: On the Constitution of Medicine*, *Thrasyloulos: Whether Health is Part of Medicine or Gymnastics*, *The Medical Art*.

Works on the semiotics of medicine include *On the Critical Days* and *On Crises*. The work *On Pulses* is divided into four parts: *On the Differences of Pulses*, *On Diagnosis*, *On the Causes of Pulses*, *On the Prognosis of Pulses*.

Next come his commentaries on Hippocrates. These include commentaries on specific works, as well as comprehensive treatments such as *On the Anatomy of Hippocrates* and *On the Elements of Hippocrates*.

The Greek text resumes at this point...

III. εὐκόλος γὰρ ἢ κρίσις αὐτῶν γενήσεται τῶν ἐξηγήσεων ὅσαι τ' ὀρθῶς λέγονται καὶ ὅσαι μὴ, προγεγυμνασμένῳ κατὰ τὰς ἡμετέρας πραγματείας. ἔξεις δ' εἰς ἔνια τῶν Ἱπποκράτους καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα καὶ ἐπειδὴ ταῦτ' ἤδη γέγραπται, προσθεῖναι πειράσομαι τὰ λοιπά. τοῦτο μὲν,

εὐκόλος, -ον: easy to understand, easy

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: distinction, judgement

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: correct

προγυμνάζω: to exercise or train beforehand

ἔνιοι, -α: some

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

προστίθημι: to add to

πειράω: to attempt, endeavour, try

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

ὅσαι τ' ... καὶ ὅσαι μὴ: “which of the expositions are stated correctly and which are not”

προγεγυμνασμένῳ: perf. part. dat., “to one who has been trained previously”

ἔξεις: fut. of ἔχω, “you will have,” addressed to Eugenianus, the addressee of this work

τὰ ἡμέτερα (sc. ὑπομνήματα): “our commentaries on some works”

ἐπειδὴ ... γέγραπται: perf., “since these already have been written”

προσθεῖναι: ao. inf. after πειράσομαι, “I will try to add the rest”

ἐὰν ζήσωμεν, ἔσται: φθάσαντος δ' ἀποθανεῖν ἐμοῦ, πρὶν ἐξηγήσασθαι τὰ κυριώτατα τῶν Ἱπποκράτους συγγραμμάτων, ἔξουσιν οἱ βουλόμενοι τὴν γνώμην γνῶναι αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας μὲν, ὡς εἴρηται, πραγματείας ἅμα τοῖς ἤδη γεγονόσιν ὑπομνήμασι καὶ τῶν ἐξηγησαμένων δὲ τὸν ἄνδρα τὰ τε τοῦ διδασκάλου Πέλοπος καὶ πού τι καὶ τῶν Νουμισιανοῦ — ἔστι δ' ὀλίγα τὰ διασωζόμενα — καὶ πρὸς τούτοις τὰ τε Σαβίνου καὶ Ῥούφου τοῦ Ἐφεσίου. Κόϊντος

ἅμα: together with (+ *dat.*)

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

βούλομαι: to will, wish to (+ *inf.*)

γνώμη, ἤ: a means of knowing

διασώζω: to preserve

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

ἐξηγέομαι: to explain

ζῶω: to live

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

Κόϊντος, ὁ: Quintus

κύριος, -α, -ον: authentic

Νουμισιανός, ὁ: Numisianus

Πέλοψ: Pelops

πρὶν: before (+ *inf.*)

Ῥούφος, ὁ: Rufus

σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

φθάνω: to come or do first or before

ἐὰν ζήσωμεν: pr. subj. in fut. more vivid protasis, “if I live”

φθάσαντος ... ἐμοῦ: ao. part. of φθάνω in gen. abs. taking the place of a protasis, “if I die before” + *inf.* i.e., “if I die before”

ἀποθανεῖν: ao. inf. supplementing φθάσαντος

πρὶν ἐξηγήσασθαι: ao. inf. of ἐξ-ηγέομαι, “before having explicated”

ἔξουσιν: fut. of ἔχω, “they will have”

οἱ βουλόμενοι: “those wishing to” + *inf.*

γνώμην: cognate acc. with γνῶναι, “to know *the knowledge*”

γνῶναι: ao. inf. with βουλόμενοι, “wishing *to know* the thought of him (i.e. Hipp.)”

τὰς ... πραγματείας: acc. obj. of ἔξουσιν, “will have both *my major works*”

γεγονόσιν: perf. part. attrib., “with those already *produced* commentaries”

τῶν ἐξηγησαμένων: ao. part. gen., “*of those who have explicated* the man” i.e. Hipp.

τὰ τε τοῦ ... Νουμισιανοῦ: also the obj. of ἔξουσιν, “will have *the (commentaries) of Pelops and Numisianus*”

Πέλοπος: Pelops of Smyrna was one of the teachers of Galen

πού τι καὶ: “anything there is”

Νουμισιανοῦ: Numisianus of Corinth, whose lectures Galen attended

τὰ διασωζόμενα: pr. part., “*those that have been preserved* are few”

Σαβίνου: Sabinus the Hippocratic, who taught Galen’s own teacher, Stratonicus

Ῥούφου τοῦ Ἐφεσίου: Rufus of Ephesus (1st C. CE). A few of his many works have survived in translation

Κόϊντος: Quintus, a Roman doctor who instructed Galen’s own teacher Satyrus

δὲ καὶ οἱ Κοῖντου μαθηταὶ τὴν Ἴπποκράτους γνώμην οὐκ ἀκριβῶς ἐγνώκασιν, διὸ καὶ πολλαχόθι τὰς ἐξηγήσεις οὐκ ὀρθῶς ποιοῦνται: Λύκος δ' ἐνίοτε καὶ προσεγκαλεῖ τῷ Ἴπποκράτει καὶ φησὶ ψεύδεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μὴ γινώσκων αὐτοῦ τὰ δόγματα:καίτοι τά γε τοῦ Λύκου βιβλία φανερώς πάντα γέγονεν. ὁ δ' ἡμέτερος διδάσκαλος Σάτυρος — τούτῳ γὰρ πρώτῳ συγγενόμενοι μετὰ ταῦτ' ἠκούσαμεν Πέλοπος — οὐ τὰς αὐτὰς ἐξηγήσεις ἐποιεῖτο τῷ Λύκῳ τῶν Ἴπποκρατείων βιβλίων: ὁμολογεῖται δὲ Σάτυρος ἀκριβέστατα διασώζειν τὰ Κοῖντου δόγματα μῆτε προσθεῖς αὐτοῖς τι μῆτ' ἀφελών: Αἰφικιανὸς μὲν γάρ τι καὶ

Αἰφικιανὸς, ὁ: Aiphicianus  
 ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate  
 ἀφαιρέω: to take from, take away from  
 γνώμη, ἡ: knowledge  
 διασώζω: preserve through  
 διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master  
 διό: wherefore, on which account  
 ἐνίοτε: sometimes  
 ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation  
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our  
 Ἴπποκράτειος, -α, -ον: Hippocratic  
 καίτοι: and yet  
 Λύκος, ὁ: Lycus

μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil  
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight  
 ὁμολογέω: to agree  
 Πέλοψ, ὁ: Pelops  
 πολλαχόθι: in many places  
 προσεγκαλέω: accuse besides (+ *dat.*)  
 προστίθημι: to add to  
 Σάτυρος, ὁ: Satyrus  
 συγγίνομαι: to be with  
 φανερός, -ά, -όν: manifest, evident  
 φημί: to declare, claim  
 ψεύδω: to lie

ἐγνώκασιν: perf. of γινώσκω, “they have not understood”

Λύκος: Lycus, another student of Quintus about whom Galen has nothing good to say

ψεύδεσθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after φησὶ, “he claims *that the man lies*”

μὴ γινώσκων: pr. part. causal, “since he does not understand,” the use of μὴ gives the participle a generalizing force, “does not *ever*”

Σάτυρος: Satyrus of Pergamum, a teacher of Galen

συγγενόμενοι: ao. part., “having been with” i.e. as a student + *dat.*

ἠκούσαμεν: ao., “we listened to” i.e. studied with + *gen.*

τῷ Λύκῳ: *dat.* with the idea of similarity from αὐτὰς, “the same expositions *as Lycus*”

διασώζειν: pr. inf. after ὁμολογεῖται, “S. is agreed *to preserve*”

μῆτε προσθεῖς: ao. part. of προσ-τίθημι, “neither having added”

μῆτ' ἀφελών: ao. part. of ἀπο-αἰρέω, “nor having removed” the use of μῆτε gives it a generalizing force, “not *ever*”

Αἰφικιανὸς: Stoic philosopher and teacher of Galen.

μετερρύθμισεν ἐπὶ τὸ Στωϊκώτερον. ἡμεῖς οὖν ἐτέρως μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ἀκηκοότες Σατύρου τὰς ἐξηγήσεις Κοῖντου, μετὰ χρόνον δ' ὕστερον ἀναγνόντες τινὰ τῶν τοῦ Λύκου κατέγνωμεν ἀμφοτέρων ὡς οὐκ ἀκριβῶς ἐγνωκότων τὴν Ἰπποκράτους γνώμην. ἄμεινον δ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ περὶ Σαβίνον τε καὶ Ροῦφον: ὁ δ' ἐν ταῖς ἡμετέραις πραγματείαις προγεγυμνασμένος ἱκανὸς καὶ τὰ τούτων κρίνειν καὶ φωρᾶσαι τὰ τε καλῶς ὑπ' αὐτῶν εἰρημένα καὶ εἴ που τύχοιεν ἐσφαλμένοι.

ἀκριβῶς: accurately

ἀμείνων, -ον: better

ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: each or both of two

γνώμη, ἡ: knowledge

ἔμπροσθεν: before

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

ἱκανός: sufficient, ready to (+ *inf.*)

καταγιγνώσκω: to judge

κρίνω: to pick out, judge

μεταρρυθμίζω: to change the rhythm of

προγυμνάζω: to exercise or train beforehand

Ροῦφος, ὁ: Rufus

Σαβίνος, ὁ: Sabinus

Στωϊκώτερος, -α, -ον: more Stoic

σφάλλω, -ά: to make to fall, trip up

τυγχάνω: to happen to (+ *part.*)

ὑστερον: later

φωρᾶω: to search after

μετερρύθμισεν: impf. of μετα-ἐν-ρυθμίζω, “he changed the rhythm,” i.e. modified the form

ἐτέρως: “in one of two ways” i.e. first (ἔμπροσθεν) from Satyrus, then later (ὑστερον) from Lycus

ἀκηκοότες: perf. part., “having heard X (acc.) from Y (gen.)”

ἀναγνόντες: ao. part., “having read”

κατέγνωμεν: ao., “I judged” + gen.

ὡς ἐγνωκότων: perf. part. in ind. st. after κατέγνωμεν agreeing with ἀμφοτέρων, “I judged both *that they had understood*”

γνώμην: cognate acc. after ἐγνωκότων, “understood *the knowledge*”

ἔγνωσαν: ao., “they understood”

ὁ ... προγεγυμνασμένος: perf. part., “he who has trained beforehand”

ἱκανός: pred. adj., “is prepared to” + *inf.*

φωρᾶσαι: ao. inf. after ἱκανός, “prepared to judge and *to search out*”

τὰ ... εἰρημένα: perf. part., “to search out *the things said well*”

εἴ που τύχοιεν: ao. opt. in ind. quest. after φωρᾶσαι, “search *whether they happened to*” + *part.*

ἐσφαλμένοι: perf. part. of σφάλλω supplementing τύχοιεν, “happend to *have been tripped up*”

His remaining logical texts for those interested in philosophy

IV. Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ καὶ περὶ τῶν Ἱπποκράτους ἐξηγήσεων  
αὐτάρκως εἶρηται, μεταβῶμεν ἐπὶ τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν ἡμετέρων  
ὑπομνημάτων, ὅσα τῆς λογικῆς ἐστὶ πραγματείας. ἔστι  
δ' ἐξ αὐτῶν σοὶ μὲν, ὦ Εὐγενιανέ, καὶ ὅσοι τὴν ἰατρικὴν  
μόνην ἐσπουδάκατε, τὰ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ αὐτάρκη, τοῖς  
δ' ἄλλοις, ὅσοι φιλοσοφία σχολάζουσι, καὶ τᾶλλα, πλὴν εἴ  
τις ἀμφοτέρας δύναται καλῶς μετέρχεσθαι τὰς θεωρίας  
ιατρικῆς τε καὶ φιλοσοφίας. εἶναι δὲ χρὴ τοῦτον ἀγχίνουθ'  
ἅμα καὶ μνήμονα καὶ φιλόπονον, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις εὐτυ-  
χηκότα τοιαύτην εὐτυχίαν οἷαν ἡμεῖς εὐτυχήσαμεν ὑπὸ πατρὶ

---

ἀγχίνοος, -ον: sagacious, shrewd

ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: each or both of two

αὐτάρκης, -ες: sufficient

αὐτάρκως: sufficiently

ἐξηγήσεις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

εὐτυχέω: to be successful, have good fortune

εὐτυχία, ἡ: good luck, success, prosperity

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

ἰατρική, ἡ: medical art

λογικός, -ή, -όν: logical

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μεταβαίνω: to pass over from one place to another

μετέρχομαι: to go among

μνήμων, -ον: mindful

πατήρ, ὁ: a father

πλὴν: except

σπουδάζω: to be eager for, be serious

σχολάζω: to have leisure, study (+ *dat.*)

φιλόπονος, -ον: industrious, diligent

χρῆ: it is necessary

---

εἶρηται: perf. of λέγω, "it has been spoken sufficiently"

μεταβῶμεν: ao. subj. hortatory of μετα-βαίνω, "let us change direction"

ἔστι ... αὐτάρκη: "is sufficient for" + *dat.*

καὶ ὅσοι: "and (to those of you) who"

ἐσπουδάκατε: perf., "(you) who have become serious about" + *acc.*

τὰ περὶ τῆς ἀποδείξεως: *The Logical Demonstrations*, the subject of ἔστι above

τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις: "but to others"

καὶ τᾶλλα: "also the other (logical) works"

πλὴν εἴ τις ... δύναται: pr. opt. in pr. gen. protasis, "unless someone is able to" + *inf.*

ἀμφοτέρας ... τὰς θεωρίας: *acc. obj. of μετέρχεσθαι*, "to pursue both disciplines"

τοῦτον: *acc. subj. of εἶναι*, "it is necessary for *this one* to be"

εὐτυχηκότα: perf. part. circum. agreeing with τοῦτον, "also having had the good fortune"

τοιαύτην ... οἷαν: correlative, "*such* good fortune *as*"

εὐτυχίαν: cognate *acc.* with εὐτυχηκότα

εὐτυχήσαμεν: ao., "*such* good fortune as I had"

παιδευθέντες, ὃς ἀριθμητικῆς τε καὶ λογιστικῆς καὶ γραμματικῆς θεωρίας ἐπιστήμων ἡμᾶς ἐν τούτοις τε κὰν τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὅσα παιδείας μαθήματα, θρέψας, ἡνίκα πεντεκαιδέκατον ἔτος ἤγομεν, ἐπὶ τὴν διαλεκτικὴν θεωρίαν ἤγεν ὡς μόνη φιλοσοφία προσέξοντας τὸν νοῦν, εἴτ' ἐξ ὄνειράτων ἐναργῶν προτραπείς ἑπτακαιδέκατον ἔτος ἄγοντας καὶ τὴν ἰατρικὴν ἐποίησεν ἀσκεῖν ἅμα τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοιαύτην ἐγὼ τὴν εὐτυχίαν εὐτυχήσας ἐκμανθάνων τε καὶ θᾶπτον ἀπάντων τῶν ἄλλων ὃ τι περ ἐδιδασκόμην, εἰ μὴ

ἄγω: to do, steer

ἅμα: together with (+ *dat.*)

ἀριθμητικός, -ή, -όν: arithmetical

ἀσκεῖω: to practice

γραμματικός, -ή, -όν: grammatical

διαλεκτικός, -ή, -όν: dialectical

ἐκμανθάνω: to learn thoroughly

ἐναργής, -ές: visible, vivid

ἐπιστήμων, -ον: knowing, wise, prudent

ἑπτακαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: seventeenth

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

εὐτυχέω, -ήσω: to be successful

εὐτυχία, ἡ: good fortune

ἡνίκα: at which time, when

θάπτων, -ον: quicker, swifter

λογιστική, -όν: mathematical

μάθημα, -ατος, τό: a lesson

νοῦς, ό: mind, attention

ὄνειρα, -ατος, τό: a dream

παιδεία, ἡ: education

παιδεύω: to bring up or rear a child

πεντεκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον: fifteenth

προσέχω: to hold to (+ *dat.*)

προτρέπω: to urge forwards

τρέφω: to rear, raise (a child)

παιδευθέντες: ao. part. pas. supplemental with εὐτυχήσαμεν, “the good fortune to have been educated”

ὃς ... ἐπιστήμων: “who, being learned in” + gen.

ὅσα παιδείας μαθήματα: whatever are the lessons of education”

θρέψας: ao. part. of τρέφω also agreeing with ὃς, “who, *having reared* me in these”

ἤγομεν: impf. of ἄγω, “when *I did* my fifteenth year,” i.e. when I turned fifteen

ἤγεν: impf. and the main verb for ὃς, “who *steered* me”

προσέξοντας: fut. part. of προσ-ἔχω agreeing with ἡμᾶς, expressing purpose, “so that *I would concentrate* my attention on” + *dat.*

προτραπείς: ao. part., “then *having been turned*”

ἄγοντας: pr. part. agreeing with ἡμᾶς, “me *turning* seventeen”

ἐποίησεν: ao., “*he caused* me to” + *inf*

εὐτυχήσας: ao. part. concessive, “even *having had* such good fortune”

ἀπάντων τῶν ἄλλων: gen. of comp. after θᾶπτον, “more quickly *than others*”

ἐδιδασκόμην: impf. pas., “what *I was being taught*”

εἰ μὴ ... καθεστήκειν: plupf. in past contrafactual protasis, “If I had not been devoted to (*εἰς*)” + *acc.*

τὸν ὅλον μου βίον εἰς τὴν τῶν ἐν ἰατρικῇ τε καὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ θεωρημάτων ἀσκησιν καθεστῆκειν, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔγνω μέγα. μηδὲν τοίνυν μηδὲ τοῦτο θαῦμα, διότι πολὺ πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἀσκούντων ἰατρικὴν τε καὶ φιλοσοφίαν ἐν οὐδετέρᾳ κατορθοῦσιν: ἢ γὰρ οὐκ ἔφυσαν καλῶς ἢ οὐκ ἐπαιδεύθησαν ὡς προσῆκεν, ἢ οὐ κατέμειναν ἐν ταῖς ἀσκήσεσιν ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τὰς πολιτικὰς πράξεις ἀπετράποντο. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν μοι κατὰ τὸ πάρεργον εἰρήσθω καίτοι γ' οὐκ ὄντα πάρεργα. τὰ γοῦν τῆς φιλοσόφου θεωρίας ἡμέτερα βιβλία μετὰ τὴν ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΞΕΩΣ πραγματείαν ἀναγιγνώσκειν χρή: τίνες δ' αὐτῶν εἰσιν αἱ ὑποθέσεις καὶ πόσαι, καθ' ἕκαστον μὲν

---

ἀναγιγνώσκω: to read

ἀποτρέπω: to turn

ἀσκέω: to train, exercise

ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: practice, training

βίος, ὁ: life

γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way

διότι: for the reason that, since

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

θαῦμα, τό: a wonder, marvel

θεώρημα, -ατος, τό: theorem

καθίστημι: to place oneself into, devote oneself to

καταμένω: to stay

κατορθόω: to accomplish successfully

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: neither of the two

παιδεύω: to educate

πάρεργον, τό: incidental matter

πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number

πολιτικός, -ή, -όν: political

πόσος, -η, -ον: how many?

πράξις, -εως, -ῆ: business

προσῆκω: to be proper

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: hypothesis, supposition

φύω: to grow naturally

χρή: it is necessary

---

τὸν ὅλον μου βίον: acc. of duration of time, "during my whole life"

ἂν ἔγνω: ao. in contrafactual apodosis, "I would have come to know"

μηδὲν ... μηδὲ: the double negative is cumulative, "this is no wonder at all"

οὐκ ἔφυσαν: ao., "they were not fit by nature"

οὐκ ἐπαιδεύθησαν: ao. pas., "they were not educated"

οὐ κατέμειναν: ao., "they did not remain"

ἀπετράποντο: ao. mid., "they turn themselves toward"

μοι: dat. of agent, "be said *by me*"

εἰρήσθω: perf. imper. 3 s., "let these things be said"

καίτοι γ' οὐκ ὄντα: pr. part. concessive, "even though not really"

τίνες ... καὶ πόσαι: ind. quest. dependent on γέγραπται and δειχθήσεται, "what the hypotheses are and how many"

καθ' ἕκαστον: "in each one of them"



αὐτῶν γέγραπται, δι' ἐκείνου δὲ δειχθήσεται τοῦ γράμματος,  
ἐν ᾧ τὴν γραφὴν ποιήσομαι ἀπάντων τῶν ἐμῶν βιβλίων.

γραφὴ, ἡ: a written account  
γράμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

δείκνυμι: to bring to light, display, exhibit

δι' ἐκείνου τοῦ γράμματος: “and also through that writing”

δειχθήσεται: fut. pas. of δείκνυμι, “will be demonstrated”

ἐν ᾧ: “that book *in which*”

ποιήσομαι: fut., “I will make a written account,” referring to Galen’s, “*On My Own Books*”

### Circumstantial Participles

Circumstantial participles are added to a noun or a pronoun to set forth some circumstance under which an action takes place. The circumstances can be of the following types: time, manner, means, cause, purpose, concession, condition or attendant circumstance. Although sometimes particles can specify the type of circumstance, often only the context can clarify its force. Here are some examples:

Time: εἰτ' ἐξ ὄνειράτων ἐναργῶν προτραπέις “then *having been turned* by vivid dreams”

Means: ἀπορράψαι τὴν βάσκανον γλώτταν αὐτῶν ἐβουλήθη οὔτε φθειγόμενός τι περαιτέρω τῶν ἀναγκαίων οὔτε διδάσκων ἐν πλήθει: “I wished to sew up the slanderous tongue *by neither speaking* anything more than necessary *nor by teaching* in crowds.”

Purpose: ὅποτε προήλθον ἐπιδείξων: “when I approached *in order to demonstrate*”  
ἦγεν ὡς μόνη φιλοσοφία προσέξοντας τὸν νοῦν: “he steered us *so that we would pay* attention to philosophy alone.” ὡς is often used in these cases to indicate an alleged purpose.

Concession: ταῦτα μὲν οὖν μοι κατὰ τὸ πάρεργον εἰρήσθω καίτοι γ' οὐκ ὄντα πάρεργα “let these be called my avocation, *even though they are not* really avocations”

Cause: φησι ψεῦδεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μὴ γιγνώσκων αὐτοῦ τὰ δόγματα: “he claims that the man lies, *since he does not (ever) know* his beliefs” μὴ in this case gives the participle a generalizing force

Condition: τις ἂν χρώμενος, τὴν ἀρίστην αἵρεσιν συστήσαιτο: “*if someone were to use it*, he would establish the best sect”

εἰ γάρ τις μὴ τοῦτ' ἔχων ἐθελήσειεν: “for if someone, *if not having this*, were to wish.” Note that μὴ is used instead of οὐ when the participle is conditional.

Attendant circumstance: αἱ δ' ἀρχαὶ τῆς γενέσεως ἅπασιν τοῖς οὖσιν ὕλην ἔχουσι: “the elements of reproduction to all beings *which have matter*”

διαδοθέντων δ' εἰς πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἄκοντος ἐμοῦ: “these *having been distributed* with me *unwilling*”

Note that this last example has two genitive absolutes, of which there are a large number in Galen (see p. 121)

V. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπύθου μου καὶ περὶ τῆς πραγματείας, ἐν ἧ τὰ παρὰ τοῖς Ἀττικοῖς συγγραφεύσιν ὀνόματα κατὰ τὴν τῶν πρώτων ἐν αὐτοῖς γραμμάτων ἡθροισται τάξιν, ἅπερ ἀπεκρινάμην σοι, βέλτιον ἡγοῦμαι κἀνταῦθα γράψαι σοι: πρόδηλον γάρ, ὅτι καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ ζητοῦσιν, ἥτις ποτ' ἐστὶν αὐτῆς ἢ ὑπόθεσις. οὐ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτ' ἀξιούμεν ἡμεῖς, ὅπερ ἔνιοι τῶν νῦν κελεύουσιν, ἅπαντας ἀττικίζειν τῇ φωνῇ, κἀν ἱατροὶ τυγχάνωσιν ὄντες ἢ φιλόσοφοι καὶ γεωμετρικοὶ καὶ μουσικοὶ καὶ νομικοὶ κἀν μηδὲν τούτων ἀλλ' ἀπλῶς ἦτοι

ἀθροίζω: to gather together	ἡγέομαι: to consider, think
ἀξιόω: to demand (+ <i>inf.</i> )	κελεύω: to exhort, order
ἀπλῶς: simply, in one way	μουσικός, -ή, -όν: musical
ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer	νομικός, -ή, -όν: legal
ἀττικίζω: to Atticize	ὄνομα, τό: name, word
Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν: Attic, Athenian	πρόδηλος, -ον: clear
βελτίων, -ον: better	πυνθάνομαι: to learn
γεωμετρικός, -ή, -όν: geometrical	συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὄ: a writer
γράμμα, -ατος, τό: letter	τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging
ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some	τυγχάνω: to happen to (+ <i>part.</i> )
ἐπεὶ: since	ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: hypothesis, supposition
ζητέω: to seek, seek for	φωνή, ἡ: a voice

ἐπύθου: ao. of *πυνθάνομαι*, “you have learned from me”  
κατὰ τὴν τῶν πρώτων γραμμάτων τάξιν: “according to the order of the first letters,”  
i.e. alphabetically  
ἡθροισται: perf. of *ἀθροίζω*, “the words have been collected”  
ἅπερ ἀπεκρινάμην: ao. in ind. quest. after *γράψαι*, “to write what I answered to you”  
κἀνταῦθα (=καὶ ἐνταῦθα): “also here (in this book)”  
γράψαι: ao. inf. epex. after *βέλτιον*, “better to write to you”  
ἥτις ποτ' ἐστὶν: ind. quest. after *ζητοῦσιν*, “are seeking what is its hypothesis”  
ἀττικίζειν: complementing *ἀξιούμεν*, “I do not demand to Atticize” i.e. to use Attic  
vocabulary consistently, an affectation of imperial Greek literature  
τῇ φωνῇ: dat. of specification, “in language”  
κἀν (=καὶ ἐάν) τυγχάνωσιν: pr. subj. in pr. gen. protasis, “even if they happen” +  
part.  
ἱατροὶ: pred. after *ὄντες*, “happen to be doctors”  
κἀν (sc. *τυγχάνωσιν ὄντες*) μηδὲν, “and even if (they happen to be) none of these”

πλουτοῦντές τινες ἢ μόνον εὐποροὶ: τούναντίον γὰρ ἀπαξιῶ  
 μηδενὶ μέμφεσθαι τῶν σολοικίζοντων τῇ φωνῇ μηδ' ἐπιτιμᾶν:  
 ἄμεινον γὰρ ἐστὶ τῇ φωνῇ μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ βίῳ σολοικίζειν τε  
 καὶ βαρβαρίζειν. ἐγράφη δέ μοι ποτε καὶ πραγματεία πρὸς  
 τοὺς ἐπιτιμῶντας τοῖς σολοικίζουσι τῇ φωνῇ: τοσοῦτου  
 δέω παιδείας τι μόριον ὑπολαμβάνειν τὸ ἀττικίζειν. ἀλλὰ  
 διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἰατροὺς καὶ φιλοσόφους, ἐν οἷς αὐτοὶ νομο-  
 θετοῦσι καινὰ σημαινόμενα τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν ὀνομάτων, ἐν  
 τούτοις ἑτέροις μέμφεσθαι, διὰ τοῦτο καὶ τῶν ὀνομάτων τὴν

ἄμεινων, -ον: better

ἀπαξιῶ: to disclaim as unworthy, disown

ἀττικίζω: to Atticize

βαρβαρίζω: to be like a barbarian

βίος, ὁ: life

δέω: to lack (+ *inf.*)

ἐναντίον, τό: opposite

ἐπιτιμᾶω: to rebuke

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek

εὐπορος, -ον: well-resourced

καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh

μέμφομαι: to blame, censure (+ *dat.*)

μόριον, τό: a piece, portion, section

νομοθετέω: to make law, establish

ὄνομα, τό: name, word

παιδεία, ἡ: education

πλουτέω: to be rich, wealthy

σημαίνω: to indicate, signify

σολοικίζω: to commit a solecism

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: so much

ὑπολαμβάνω: to understand

φωνή, ἡ: a voice

πλουτοῦντές: pr. part. also suppl. *τυγχάνωσιν*, “but simply happen *to be rich*”

τούναντίον: adv., “on the contrary”

μέμφεσθαι: pr. inf. complementing *ἀπαξιῶ*, “I deem it unworthy *to blame*” + dat.

τῶν σολοικίζοντων: pr. part., “anyone *of those committing solecisms*”

μηδ' ἐπιτιμᾶν: pr. inf. also after *ἀπαξιῶ*, “nor *to rebuke*”

μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ βίῳ: “in language *rather than in life*”

σολοικίζειν: inf. epex. after *ἄμεινον*, “better *to commit solecisms*”

ἐγράφη: ao. pas., “*was written by me*”

τοὺς ἐπιτιμῶντας: pr. part., “against *those rebuking*” + dat.

τοσοῦτου δέω: “so much do I lack,” + inf., i.e., “*so far from understanding*”

τὸ ἀττικίζειν: art. inf. obj. of *ὑπολαμβάνειν*, “understanding *Atticizing to be a part*”

διὰ τὸ ... μέμφεσθαι: pr. inf. art., “because of the blaming,” i.e., because doctors  
 blame

ἐν οἷς αὐτοὶ: philosophers *among whom they themselves*

καινὰ σημαινόμενα: pr. part. used substantively, “new significations”

ἐν τούτοις ἑτέροις: “blame *in other (doctors)*”

διὰ τοῦτο: “for this reason”

ἐξήγησιν ἐποησάμην ἐν ὀκτῶ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα βιβλίοις ἀθροισάμενος ἐκ τῶν Ἀττικῶν συγγραφέων αὐτά, καθάπερ ἐκ τῶν κωμικῶν ἄλλα. γέγραπται μὲν οὖν, ὡς ἔφην, ἡ πραγματεία διὰ τὰ σημαινόμενα: σὺν τούτῳ δ' εὐθέως ὑπάρχει τοῖς ἀναγνωσομένοις αὐτὰ καὶ ἡ τῶν Ἀττικῶν ὀνομάτων γνῶσις, οὐδὲν αὐτῇ καθ' ἑαυτὴν ἄξιον ἔχουσα μεγάλης σπουδῆς: ἀλλὰ γε διὰ τοὺς κακῶς χρωμένους τοῖς ὀνόμασιν ἄλλη μοι γέγραπται πραγματεία περὶ τῆς ὀρθότητος αὐτῶν, ἣν δὴ καὶ πρώτην ἀπασῶν ἄμεινον ἀναγιγνώσκειν.

---

ἀθροῖζω: to gather together

ἀμείνων, -ον: better

ἀναγιγνώσκω: to read

ἄξιος, -ία, -ον: worthy of (+ gen.)

Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν: Attic, Athenian

γνῶσις, -εως, ἡ: knowledge

ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ: an explanation

εὐθέως: correctly

καθάπερ: just as

κακός, -ή, -όν: bad

κωμικός, -ή, -όν: comic

ὀρθότης, -ητος, ἡ: properness, right use

ὄνομα, τό: name, word

σημαίνω: to indicate, signify

σπουδή, ἡ: seriousness

συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: a writer

τεσσαράκοντα: forty

ὑπάρχω: to begin, become

φημί: to declare, say

χράομαι: to use (+ dat.)

---

ἐποησάμην: ao. mid., “I made this explanation”

ἀθροισάμενος: ao. part., “having gathered”

καθάπερ ... ἄλλα: “just as (I did) others from the comic poets”

διὰ τὰ σημαινόμενα: “on account of the (new) meanings of the words”

σὺν τούτῳ: “along with this” i.e. at the same time

τοῖς ἀναγνωσομένοις: “to those reading these (new meanings)”

αὐτὰ καὶ ἡ ... γνῶσις: nom. subj. of ὑπάρχει, “the things themselves and the knowledge arises,” i.e. the meanings of the words and the Attic vocabulary

αὐτῇ: “this itself” i.e. the Attic vocabulary

οὐδὲν: acc. of resp., “not at all”

ἄξιον ἔχουσα: pr. part., “this having worth” + gen.

διὰ τοὺς κακῶς χρωμένους: pr. part., “on account of those using badly” + dat.

αὐτῶν: “about the right use of them” i.e. of Attic words

ἣν δὴ: “which very work”

ἀναγιγνώσκειν: pr. inf. epex. after ἄμεινον, “better to read”



ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ  
ΟΤΙ Ο ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΙΑΤΡΟΣ ΚΑΙ  
ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΟΣ

Galen's  
*That the Best Physician is also  
a Philosopher*



## ΟΤΙ Ο ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΙΑΤΡΟΣ ΚΑΙ ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΟΣ

1. Οἷόν τι πεπόνθασιν οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀθλητῶν ἐπιθυμοῦντες μὲν ὀλυμπιονίκαι γενέσθαι, μηδὲν δὲ πράττειν, ὡς τούτου τυχεῖν, ἐπιτηδεύοντες, τοιοῦτόν τι καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν ἰατρῶν συμβέβηκεν. ἐπαινοῦσι μὲν γὰρ Ἴπποκράτην καὶ πρῶτον ἀπάντων ἡγοῦνται, γενέσθαι δ' αὐτοὺς ἐν ὁμοίοις ἐκείνῳ πάντα μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦτο πράττουσιν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ οὐ σμικρὰν μοῖραν εἰς ἰατρικὴν φησι συμβάλλεσθαι τὴν ἀστρονομίαν καὶ δηλονότι τὴν ταύτης ἡγουμένην ἐξ ἀνάγκης γεωμετρίαν·

---

ἀθλητής, ὁ: an athlete  
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity  
ἀστρονομία, ἡ: astronomy  
γεωμετρία, ἡ: geometry  
δηλονότι: quite clearly  
ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend  
ἐπιθυμέω: to desire  
ἐπιτηδεύω: to practise, to take to (+ *inf.*)  
ἡγέομαι: to consider, think, precede  
ἰατρικός, -ή, -όν: medical  
ἰατρός, ὁ: a doctor, physician

---

Ἴπποκράτης, ὁ: Hippocrates  
μοῖρα, -as, ἡ: a part, portion  
Ὀλυμπιονίκης, -ου, ὁ: Olympic champion  
ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, same  
πάσχω: to experience, suffer  
σμικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little  
συμβαίνω: to come together, to happen  
συμβάλλω: to throw together, contribute  
τυγχάνω: to hit upon (+ *gen.*)  
φημί: to declare, make known

---

οἷόν τι ... τοιοῦτόν τι: correlatives, “like the thing ... just such a thing”

πεπόνθασιν: perf. of *πάσχω*, “many *have experienced*”

γενέσθαι: ao. inf. after *ἐπιθυμοῦντες*, “desiring *to become*”

πράττειν: pr. inf. after *ἐπιτηδεύοντες*, “taking care *to do*”

ὡς τούτου τυχεῖν: ao. inf. of *τυγχάνω* with *ὡς* expressing intended result, “in order to achieve this”

συμβέβηκεν: perf. of *συν-βαίνω*, “the same *has happened*”

πρῶτον (sc. *εἶναι*): pred. in ind. st. after *ἡγοῦνται*, “they consider him *to be the first*”

γενέσθαι δ' αὐτοῖς: ao. inf., “*but for them to become*,” in apposition to *τοῦτο* below

ἐν ὁμοίοις: “in the same ranks with” + dat.

μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦτο: “everything *rather than this*” *τοῦτο* refers to the cl. *γενέσθαι ... ἐκείνῳ*

ὁ μὲν: “for that one” i.e. Hippocrates

συμβάλλεσθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after *φησι*, “he says *that astronomy contributes*”

δηλονότι (=δηλον [ἔστι] ὅτι): “clearly”

τὴν ταύτης ἡγουμένην: “the one preceding this” i.e. astronomy presupposes geometry



οἱ δ' οὐ μόνον αὐτοὶ μετέρχονται τούτων οὐδετέραν ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς μετιοῦσι μέμφονται. καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ φύσιν σώματος ὁ μὲν ἀκριβῶς ἀξιοῖ γινώσκειν, ἀρχὴν εἶναι φάσκων αὐτὴν τοῦ κατ' ἰατρικὴν λόγου παντός· οἱ δ' οὕτω καὶ περὶ τοῦτο σπουδάζουσιν, ὥστ' οὐ μόνον ἐκάστου τῶν μορίων οὐσίαν ἢ πλοκὴν ἢ διάπλασιν ἢ μέγεθος ἢ τὴν πρὸς τὰ παρακείμενα κοινωνίαν ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τὴν θέσιν ἐπίστανται. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ ὥς ἐκ τοῦ μὴ γινώσκειν κατ' εἶδη τε καὶ γένη διαιρεῖσθαι

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate

ἀξιώω: to deem worthy of (+ *inf.*)

ἀρχή, ἡ: beginning

γένος, -ους, τό: genus, category

διαιρέω: to distinguish

διάπλασις, -εως, ἡ: formation

εἶδος, -εος, τό: species

ἐπίσταμαι: to know

θέσις, -εως, ἡ: a position

ιατρική, ἡ: medical art

κοινωνία, ἡ: a relationship, association

μετέρχομαι: to go among

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude

μέμφομαι: to blame, censure (+ *dat.*)

μόριον, τό: a piece, portion, section

οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: neither of the two

οὐσία, ἡ: substance, property

παρακείμεαι: to lie beside or before

πλοκή, ἡ: structure

σπουδάζω: to endeavor, be eager

σώμα, -ατος, τό: body

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural condition

οἱ δέ: “but these (modern doctors)”

τούτων οὐδετέραν: “neither of these,” i.e. astronomy and geometry

τοῖς μετιοῦσι: pr. part. dat. pl. of μετέρχομαι after μέμφονται, “they blame *those who do partake*”

καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ: indicating a climax, “moreover”

ὁ μὲν ... ἀξιοῖ: pr., “while he (Hippocrates) deems it worthy” + *inf.*

εἶναι: *inf.* in ind. st. after φάσκων, “claiming this *to be* the beginning”

οἱ δέ: “but these (modern doctors)”

οὕτω ... σπουδάζουσιν: “in such a way they endeavor”

ὥστε ... οὐδὲ ἐπίστανται: res. cl., “with the result that they neither know,” the indicative emphasizes the actual occurrence of the result

ἐκάστου τῶν μορίων οὐσίαν: “the substance of each of the parts”

πρὸς τὰ παρακείμενα: “the relationship *to the nearby parts*”

ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ... ἐπίστανται: “*but neither know* the position (in the body)” the οὐδὲ must be understood with the list before as well

καὶ μὲν γε καὶ: “furthermore”

ὥς ... συμβαίνει: “(H. says) *that it happens*”

ἐκ τοῦ μὴ γινώσκειν: art. *inf.* gen., “from *the not knowing how to*” + *inf.*

κατ' εἶδη τε καὶ γένη: “according to species and genus”

διαιρεῖσθαι: pr. *inf.* of δια-αἰρέω after γινώσκειν, “know how *to distinguish*”

τὰ νοσήματα συμβαίνει τοῖς ἰατροῖς ἀμαρτάνειν τῶν θεραπευτικῶν σκοπῶν, Ἴπποκράτει μὲν εἴρηται προτρέποντι τὴν λογικὴν ἡμᾶς ἐξασκεῖν θεωρίαν· οἱ δὲ νῦν ἰατροὶ τοσοῦτον ἀποδέουσιν ἡσκησθαι κατ' αὐτήν, ὥστε καὶ τοῖς ἀσκούσιν ὡς ἄχρηστα μεταχειριζομένοις ἐγκαλοῦσιν.

ἀμαρτάνω: to miss, miss the mark  
ἀποδέω: to be in want of, lack  
ἀσκέω: to practice, train  
ἄχρηστος, -ον: useless, unprofitable  
ἐγκαλέω: to accuse (+ dat. )  
ἐξασκέω: to practice, train  
θεραπευτικός, -ή, -όν: therapeutic  
θεωρία, ἡ: science, theory

λογικός, -ή, -όν: logical  
μεταχειρίζω: to handle, manage  
νόσημα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease  
προτρέπω: to urge forwards  
σκοπός, δ: purpose, aim  
συμβαίνει: to occur  
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο: so large, so tall  
ὡς: + part., expressing alleged grounds of action

συμβαίνει: "it happens to" + dat. + inf.

τῶν ... σκοπῶν: gen. pl. after ἀμαρτάνειν, "that they miss *their aims*"

Ἴπποκράτει μὲν: dat. of agent, "it was said *by Hippocrates*"

εἴρηται: perf. pas. of λέγω, "it was said"

προτρέποντι: pr. circum. part. dat., "as he was *urging us to*" + inf.

ἐξασκεῖν: pr. inf. complementing προτρέποντι, "urging us *to practice*"

οἱ δὲ νῦν ἰατροὶ: "but present day doctors"

τοσοῦτον ... ὥστε: correlatives, "so much .. with the result that"

ἡσκησθαι: perf. inf. of ἀσκέω complementing ἀποδέουσιν, "they fail *to have practiced*"

ὥστε ... ἐγκαλοῦσιν: res. cl., "with the result that they accuse" + dat.

τοῖς ἀσκούσιν: pr. part. dat., "those who do practice"

ὡς ἄχρηστα μεταχειριζομένοις: pr. part. dat. agreeing with τοῖς ἀσκούσιν, "on the (alleged) grounds that they manage useless things"

### Result Clauses

ὥστε introduces result clauses either (a.) with an infinitive or (b.) with a finite verb.

- ὥστε + infinitive indicates a possible or intended result, without emphasizing its actual occurrence. The infinitive does not express time, but only aspect.
- ὥστε + indicative emphasizes the actual occurrence of the result. Both time and aspect are indicated by the form of the verb. Any form of the verb that can be used in a main clause (e.g., potential optative) can be used with ὥστε.

μηδὲν δὲ πράττειν, ὡς τούτου τυχεῖν, ἐπιτηδεύοντες "endeavoring to do nothing *so that they achieve this*"

οἱ δ' οὕτω καὶ περὶ τοῦτο σπουδάζουσιν, ὥστ'... οὐδὲ τὴν θέσιν ἐπίστανται. "They are so eager about this *that they do not know the position.*"

οἱ δὲ νῦν ἰατροὶ τοσοῦτον ἀποδέουσιν ἡσκησθαι ὥστε καὶ τοῖς ἀσκούσιν ὡς ἄχρηστα μεταχειριζομένοις ἐγκαλοῦσιν. "Present day doctors lack practice so much *that they accuse those who do practice of managing things badly.*"

οὕτω δὲ καὶ τοῦ προγιγνώσκειν τὰ τε παρόντα καὶ τὰ προγεγονότα καὶ τὰ μέλλοντα γενήσεσθαι τῷ κάμνοντι πολλὴν χρῆναι πεποιῆσθαι πρόνοιαν Ἰπποκράτης φησίν· οἱ δὲ καὶ περὶ τοῦτο τὸ μέρος τῆς τέχνης ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον ἐσπουδάκασιν, ὥστ', εἴ τις αἰμορραγίαν ἢ ἰδρώτα προείποι, γότητά τε καὶ παραδοξολόγον ἀποκαλοῦσι. σχολῆ γ' ἂν οὗτοι ἄλλα προλέγοντός τινος ἀνάσχοιντο· σχολῆ δ' ἂν ποτε τῆς

αἰμορραγία, ἦ: hemorrhage

ἀνέχω: to hold up, endure

ἀποκαλέω: to disparage

γότης, -ητος, ὄ: a wizard

ἰδρώς, -ῶτος, ὄ: sweat

κάμνω: to be sick

μέλλω: to be about to (+ *inf.*)

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

παραδοξολόγος, ὄ: telling of marvels.

πᾶρεμμ: to be present

προγιγνώσκω: to know beforehand, to make a prognosis about

προγίγνομαι: to happen before

προείπον: to predict

προλέγω: to predict

πρόνοια, ἦ: foresight, foreknowledge

σπουδάζω: to be eager to, endeavor

σχολῆ: (*adv.*) scarcely

τέχνη, ἦ: art, skill

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: of such a kind

χρή: it is necessary

τοῦ προγιγνώσκειν: art. inf. gen. of specification, “just so also *for making a prognosis about*” + acc.

τὰ παρόντα: pr. part., “the present”

τὰ προγεγονότα: perf. part., “the past”

γενήσεσθαι: fut. inf. of γίγνομαι after τὰ μέλλοντα, “the things about to *happen to*” + dat.

χρῆναι (=χρή + εἶναι): pr. inf. in ind. st. after φησίν: H. says *that it is necessary*” + inf.

πεποιῆσθαι: perf. inf. pas. of ποιέω complementing χρῆναι, “necessary for much foresight *to have been been made*”

οἱ δὲ: “but these (doctors)”

ἐσπουδάκασιν: perf., “they have endeavored in such a way”

ὥστε ... ἀποκαλοῦσιν: res. cl., “*so that they disparage him*”

εἴ τις ... προείποι: ao. opt. in present gen. cond. (where εἰ + subj. would be expected), “if ever someone predicts”

γότηα: acc. pred., “they disparage him as *a wizard*”

ταῦτα προλέγοντος: pr. part. gen. s. after ἀνέχονται, “when they do not endure someone *speaking such things*”

ἂν ... ἀνάσχοιντο: ao. opt. pot. of ἀνα-ἔχω, “scarcely *would these endure*” + gen.

διαίτης τὸ σχῆμα πρὸς τὴν μέλλουσαν ἔσσεσθαι τοῦ νοσήματος ἀκμὴν καταστήσαιντο, καὶ μὴν Ἴπποκράτης οὕτως γε διαιτᾶν κελεύει. τί δὴ οὖν ὑπόλοιπόν, ὃ ζηλοῦσι τάνδρος; οὐ γὰρ δὴ τὴν γε τῆς ἐρμηνείας δεινότητα· τῷ μὲν γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο κατάρθωται, τοῖς δ' οὕτω τούναντίον, ὥστε πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἰδεῖν ἔστι καθ' ἓν ὄνομα δις ἀμαρτάνοντας ὃ μῆδ' ἐπινοῆσαι ῥάδιον.

---

ἀκμή, ἡ: a point, peak

ἀνὴρ, ὁ: a man

ἀμαρτάνω: to miss, miss the mark

δεινότης, -τητος, η: skill

δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, regime

δῖς: twice, doubly

εἶδον: to see

ἐναντίον, τό: opposite

ἐπινοέω: to think of, imagine

ἐρμηνεία, ἡ: interpretation, explanation

ζηλέω: to be zealous for

καθίστημι: to set down, establish

κατορθόω: to set upright, erect

κελεύω: to exhort, order

μέλλω: to be about to (+ *inf.*)

μηδέ: but not or and not, nor

ὄνομα, τό: a name

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy

σχῆμα, -ατος, τό: form

ὑπόλοιπος, -ον: left behind

---

ἄν ... καταστήσαιντο: ao. opt. pot. of κατα-ἵστημι, “scarcely would they base the form of a diet”

πρὸς τὴν ... ἀκμὴν: “base it on the peak”

ἔσσεσθαι: fut. inf. complementing μέλλουσαν, “the about to be peak”

ὃ: acc. resp., “with respect to which they are zealous”

τάνδρος (= τοῦ ἀνδρός): gen. after ζηλοῦσι, “they are zealous for the man (i.e. Hippocrates)”

οὐ γὰρ δὴ τὴν γε: “surely not with respect to his skill”

τῷ μὲν: dat. of agent, “by him” i.e. Hippocrates

κατάρθωται: perf. of κατα-ὀρθόω, “this too was accomplished”

τοῖς δέ: “but by them”

ὥστε ... ἔστι: res. cl., “so that it is possible” + inf.

πολλοὺς ... ἀμαρτάνοντας: pr. part. in obj. cl. after ἰδεῖν: “to see many making two mistakes”

καθ' ἓν ὄνομα: “in one word”

ἐπινοῆσαι: ao. inf. of ἐπι-νοέω epex. after ῥάδιον (ἔστι), “which is not easy to imagine”

II. Διόπερ ἔδοξέ μοι ζητῆσαι τὴν αἰτίαν ἣτις ποτ' ἐστί, δι' ἣν καίτοι θαυμάζοντες ἅπαντες τὸν ἄνδρα μήτ' ἀναγιγνώσκουσιν αὐτοῦ τὰ συγγράμματα μήτ', εἰ καὶ τῷ τοῦτο παρασταίῃ, συνίησι τῶν λεγομένων ἢ, εἰ καὶ τοῦτ' εὐτυχήσειεν, ἀσκήσει τὴν θεωρίαν ἐπεξέρχεται βεβαιώσασθαί τε καὶ εἰς ἕξιν ἀγαγεῖν βουλόμενος. εὐρίσκω δὴ καὶ σύμπαντα κατορθούμενα βουλήσει τε καὶ δυνάμει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις παραγιγνόμενα· θατέρου δ' αὐτῶν

ἄγω: to lead, bring

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause

ἀναγιγνώσκω: to read

ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: practice, training

βεβαιώω: to confirm

βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: a willing, wish

βούλομαι: to will, wish

διόπερ: therefore

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, faculty

ἕξις, -εως, ἡ: habit of mind, practice

ἐπεξέρχομαι: to go thoroughly through

εὐρίσκω: to find

εὐτυχέω: to succeed

ζητέω: to seek

θαυμάζω: to wonder

κατορθόω: to set upright, erect

μήτε: and not

παραγιγνομαι: to be in addition, to accompany (+ *dat.*)

παρίστημι: to happen to be for (+ *dat.*)

συνίημι: to bring together, understand

σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

σύμπας: all together, all at once, all in a body

ζητῆσαι: ao. inf. of ζητέω complementing ἔδοξέ, "it seemed good to seek"

ἣτις ποτ' ἐστί: "whatever it is"

δι' ἣν: "on account of which" i.e., "why?" introducing ind. quest. with the verbs συνίησι and ἐπεξέρχεται below, which are also apodoses of pr. gen. conditions

καίτοι θαυμάζοντες: concessive, "even though admiring"

εἰ ... παρασταίῃ: ao. opt. in pr. gen. cond., "even if this is the case for someone" (i.e. if he actually reads)

τῷ: (= τινι) "to someone"

μήτε ... συνίησι: pr. of συν-ίημι, "why he does not understand"

εἰ ... εὐτυχήσειαν: ao. opt. of εὐτυχέω in pr. gen. cond., "or even if he succeeds"

(μήτε) ἐπεξέρχεται: pr. of ἐπι-ἕξ-ἔρχομαι, continuation of ind. quest., "or why he does (not) thoroughly pursue theory by practice"

βεβαιώσασθαί: ao. inf. of βεβαιώω complementing βουλόμενος, "by seeking to confirm for himself theory"

ἀγαγεῖν: ao. inf. of ἄγω also with βουλόμενος, "and to bring theory into his practice"

βουλόμενος: pr. part. used instrumentally, "by seeking"

κατορθούμενα: pr. part. pas. n. pl. of κατα-ορθόω in ind. st. after εὐρίσκω, "I find that everything is successful for men"

παραγιγνόμενα: pr. part., "provided that they are accompanied by will and ability"

θατέρου: (= τοῦ ἑτέρου) gen. after ἀτυχήσαντι, "lacks either of these"

ἀτυχήσαντι τὸ καὶ τοῦ τέλους ἀναγκαῖον ἀποτυχεῖν. αὐτίκα γέ τοι τοὺς ἀθλητὰς ἢ διὰ τὴν τοῦ σώματος ἀφύϊαν ἢ διὰ τὴν τῆς ἀσκήσεως ἀμέλειαν ὀρώμεν ἀποτυγχάνοντας τοῦ τέλους· ὅτω δ' ἂν καὶ ἡ τοῦ σώματος φύσις ἀξιόνικος ἢ καὶ τὰ τῆς ἀσκήσεως ἄμεμπτα, τίς μηχανὴ μὴ οὐ πολλοὺς ἀνελέσθαι τόνδε στεφανίτας ἀγῶνας; ἄρ' οὖν ἐν ἀμφοτέροις οἱ νῦν ἰατροὶ δυστυχοῦσιν οὔτε δύναμιν οὔτε βούλησιν ἀξιόλογον ἐπιφερόμενοι περὶ τὴν τῆς τέχνης ἄσκησιν

---

ἀγών, -ου, ὁ: a contest	αὐτίκα: straightway, at once
ἀθλητής, ὁ: a prizefighter	ἀφύϊα, ἡ: lack of natural power
ἀμέλεια, ἡ: carelessness, neglect	βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: a willingness
ἄμεμπτος, -ον: blameless	δυστυχεῖω: to be unlucky, unhappy
ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: each or both of two	δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, ability
ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary	ἐπιφέρω: to bring along
ἀναιρέω: to take up, win	μηχανή, ἡ: an instrument, machine
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: worthy of mention, sufficient	ὀράω: to see
ἀξιόνικος, -ον: worthy of victory	στεφανίτης, ὁ: consisting of a crown
ἀποτυγχάνω: to fail in hitting, to fall short (+ gen. )	σῶμα, σώματος, τό: body
ἄρα: particle introducing a question	τέλος, -εος, τό: fulfilment, completion
ἄσκησις, -εως, ἡ: exercise, practice, training	τοι: let me tell you, surely
ἀτυχεῖω: to be unlucky, fail, lack	φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural condition

---

ἀτυχήσαντι: ao. part. dat. s. m. of ἀτυχεῖω, “to whoever lacks” + gen.

τὸ ... ἀποτυχεῖν: ao. inf. art. of ἀπο-τυγχάνω, “the falling short of (+ gen) is necessary.

ἀποτυγχάνοντας: pr. part. in ind. st. after ὀρώμεν, “we see that they (athletes) fall short of” + gen.

ὅτω δ' ἂν ... ἡ: pr. subj. in gen. rel. clause, “to whomever the nature is”

τὰ τῆς ἀσκήσεως: “the (matters) of exercise”

τίς μηχανή: “what device is there”

μὴ οὐ ... ἀνελέσθαι: ao. inf. of ἀνα-αἰρέομαι after the idea of *hindering* contained in the word μηχανή, “what device would prevent this one from winning”

τόνδε: “this one” the subj. of ἀνελέσθαι

ἐν ἀμφοτέροις: “in both aspects,” which are explained in the next clause

ἐπιφερόμενοι: pr. part., “bringing with them for the practice”

ἢ τὸ μὲν ἕτερον αὐτοῖς ὑπάρχει, θατέρου δ' ἀπολείπονται;  
 τὸ μὲν δὴ μηδένα φύεσθαι δύναμιν ἔχοντα ψυχικὴν ἰκανὴν  
 καταδέξασθαι τέχνην οὕτω φιλάνθρωπον οὗ μοι δοκεῖ λόγον  
 ἔχειν ὁμοίου γε δὴ τοῦ κόσμου καὶ τότε ὄντος καὶ νῦν καὶ  
 μήτε τῶν ὠρῶν τῆς τάξεως ὑπελάλαγμένης μήτε τῆς ἡλι-  
 ακῆς περιόδου μετακεκοσμημένης μήτ' ἄλλου τινὸς ἀστέρος  
 ἢ ἀπλανοῦς ἢ πλανωμένου μεταβολὴν τιν' ἐσχηκότος·

ἀπλανής, -ές: not wandering, fixed  
 ἀπολείπω: to leave behind  
 ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: star  
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, faculty  
 εὐλογος, -ον: reasonable, sensible  
 ἡλιακός, -ή, -όν: of the sun, solar  
 ἰκανός, -ή, ὄν: sufficient to (+ *inf.*)  
 καταδείκνυμι: to invent and make known  
 κόσμος, ὁ: order  
 λόγος, ὁ: reason  
 μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing  
 μετακοσμέω: to redesign

μήτε: and not  
 ὁμοίως, -α, -ον: like, same  
 περίοδος, ἡ: a circular course, orbit  
 πλανάομαι: to wander  
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging  
 τότε: at that time, then  
 ὑπαλλάττω: to change  
 ὑπάρχω: to begin, be present  
 φιλάνθρωπος, -ον: benevolent, kindly  
 φύω: to bring forth, produce  
 ψυχικός, -ή, -όν: spiritual  
 ὦρα, ἡ: season

ἢ τὸ μὲν ἕτερον ... θατέρου δέ: “*or is one present ... but they leave behind the other?*”

θατέρου (= τοῦ ἑτέρου): gen. after ἀπολείπονται

τὸ μὲν δὴ φύεσθαι: pr. mid. articular inf., the subj. of δοκεῖ below, “the being naturally born”

μηδένα ... ἔχοντα: acc. s. subj. of φύεσθαι, “(the fact that) *no one having* power is born naturally”

καταδέξασθαι: ao. inf. epex. of κατα-δείκνυμι explaining ἰκανὴν, “power sufficient to *invent and teach*”

φιλάνθρωπον: pred. acc., “a skill so *humane*”

οὗ μοι δοκεῖ λόγον: “does not seem to be reasonable,” the subject is the articular inf. τὸ φύεσθαι

τοῦ κόσμου ... ὄντος: gen. abs., “*the world being* the same”

καὶ τότε ... καὶ νῦν: “both then and now”

τῆς τάξεως ὑπελάλαγμένης: pr. part. of ὑπο-ἀλλάττω in gen. abs., “the order not having changed”

περιόδου μετακεκοσμημένης: perf. part. pas. of μετα-κοσμέω in gen. abs., “nor the orbit having been redesigned”

ἄλλου τινὸς ... ἐσχηκότος: perf. part. act. of ἔχω in gen. abs., “*nor any other* (star) having had any change”

ἀστέρος πλανωμένου: a “wandering star” is a planet

εὐλογον δὲ διὰ μοχθηρὰν τροφήν, ἣν οἱ νῦν ἄνθρωποι τρέφονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ πλούτον ἀρετῆς εἶναι τιμιώτερον οὐθ' οἶος Φειδίας ἐν πλάσταις οὐθ' οἶος Ἀπελλῆς ἐν γραφεύσιν οὐθ' οἶος Ἴπποκράτης ἐν ἰατροῖς ἔτι γίνεσθαι τινα. καίτοι τό γ' ὑστέροις τῶν παλαιῶν ἡμῖν γεγονέναι καὶ τὰς τέχνας

ἀρετή, ἡ: goodness, excellence  
γραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: a painter  
μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν: wretched  
παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years  
πλάστης, -ου, ὁ: a sculptor

πλούτος, ὁ: wealth  
τίμιος, -ον: valued  
τρέφω: to nourish, provide nourishment  
τροφή, ἡ: upbringing, nourishment  
ὑστερος, -α, -ον: latter, last

εὐλογον δὲ (sc. ἐστὶ): “but rather it is sensible (to say that)” contrasting with τὸ μὲν ... οὐ λόγον above.

ἣν: rel. pron., internal acc. with τρέφονται, “the nourishment *which* men today provide”

τὸ ... εἶναι: art. inf. acc. after διὰ, “because of the wealth *being* more valued”

ἀρετῆς: gen. of comp. after τιμιώτερον, “more valued *than virtue*”

οὐθ' οἶος ... οὐθ' οἶος: “neither like ... nor like”

Φειδίας: Pheidias (480-30 BCE), a famous sculptor

Ἀπελλῆς: Apelles (fl. 320 BCE), a famous painter

γίνεσθαι τινα: pr. inf. in ind. st. after εὐλογον δ' ἐστὶ, “it is sensible (to say) *that someone is being born*”

τό ... γεγονέναι: art. perf. inf., “*the having been born* later” the subj. of ἣν

τῶν παλαιῶν: gen. of comp. after ὑστέροις, “later *than the ancients*”

### Genitive Absolutes

Genitive absolutes combine a participle with a noun or pronoun that is not the subject or object of the main clause in order to set forth some circumstance under which an action takes place. Like other circumstantial participles, they can indicate time, manner, means, cause, purpose, concession, condition or attendant circumstance. Sometimes the noun or pronoun is suppressed and must be supplied by the context:

μήτε τῶν ὥρῶν τῆς τάξεως ὑπηλλαγμένης μήτε τῆς ἡλιακῆς περιόδου μετακεκοσμημένης: “since neither the order of the seasons *having changed*, nor the orbit of the sun *having been redesigned*”

φιλοχρηματίας ἀναπειθούσης ἢ γοητευούσης ἡδονῆς πράττουσιν: “with love of money *persuading* them or pleasure *beguiling* them, they do these things”

A genitive absolute can also substitute for an accusative participle in indirect statement:

τοῦ μὲν Πέλοπος, ὡς μὴ δυναμένης τῆς ἰατρικῆς δι' ἐμπειρίας μόνης συστήναι ... ἐπιδεικνύντος: “With Pelops demonstrating *that medicine is not able* to be composed through experience alone”



ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἐπὶ πλείστον προηγμένας παραλαμβάνειν οὐ  
 μικρὸν ἢν πλεονέκτημα. τὰ γοῦν ὑφ' Ἴπποκράτους εὐρημένα  
 χρόνῳ παμπόλλῳ ῥᾶστον ἦν ἐν ὀλιγίστοις ἔτεσιν ἐκμαθόντα  
 τῷ λοιπῷ χρόνῳ τοῦ βίου πρὸς τὴν τῶν λειπόντων εὔρεσιν  
 καταχρήσασθαι. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐνδέχεται πλοῦτον ἀρετῆς τιμιώτε-  
 ρον ὑποθέμενον καὶ τὴν τέχνην, οὐκ εὐεργεσίας ἀνθρώπων  
 ἔνεκεν ἀλλὰ χρηματισμοῦ, μαθόντα τοῦ τέλους τοῦ κατ'

ἀρετή, ἡ: goodness, excellence

βίος ὁ: life

γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way

εὐεργεσία, ἡ: well-doing

ἐκμανθάνω: to learn thoroughly

ἐνδέχομαι: to admit, to be possible to (+ *inf.*)

ἔνεκα: for the sake of (+ *gen.*)

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

εὔρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a finding, discovery

εὐρίσκω: to find

καταχρόομαι: to use fully (+ *dat.*)

λείπω: to leave behind, remain

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

παραλαμβάνω: to take in addition

πάμπολυς, -πόλλη, -πολυ: very much

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πλεονέκτημα, -ατος, τό: an advantage

πλοῦτος, ὁ: wealth

προάγω: to lead forward, advance

ῥᾶδιος, -α, -ον: easy

σ μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little

τέλος, -εος, τό: fulfilment, end

τίμος, -ον: valued

ὑποτίθημι: to suppose (+ *inf.*)

χρηματισμός, ὁ: personal gain, money-  
making

ὑπ' ἐκείνων: "advanced by them," i.e. the ancients

προηγμένας: perf. part. pas. acc. pl. f. of προ-ἄγω, "arts which have been advanced"

(τὸ) παραλαμβάνειν: art. inf. also the subj. of ἦν, "the having in addition"

τὰ εὐρημένα: acc. pl. perf. part. of εὐρίσκω, "the things that have been discovered"

χρόνῳ παμπόλλῳ: dat. of time within which, "in the course of a very long time"

ἦν ῥᾶστον: "it would be very easy" + acc. + inf.

ἐκμαθόντα: ao. part. acc. s. m. of ἐκ-μανθάνω agreeing with the subject of  
καταχρήσασθαι, "having learned thoroughly"

τῶν λειπόντων: pr. part. gen., "the discovery of the remaining things"

καταχρήσασθαι: ao. inf. epex. explaining ῥᾶστον, "very easy to make full use of" + dat.

οὐκ ἐνδέχεται: "it is not possible" + acc. + inf.

ἀρετῆς: gen. of comp. after τιμιώτερον, "more honorable than virtue"

τιμιώτερον: acc. pred. of πλοῦτον, "supposes wealth to be more honorable"

ὑποθέμενον: ao. part. mid. acc. s. of ὑπο-τίθημι agreeing with subj. of ἐφίεσθαι, "for  
the man who supposes wealth"

οὐκ εὐεργεσίας ... ἀλλὰ χρηματισμοῦ: both genitives are governed by ἔνεκεν, "not  
for the sake of well-doing, but for the sake of personal gain"

μαθόντα: ao. part. of μανθάνω also agreeing with subj. of ἐφίεσθαι, "for the man who  
has learned the skill"

τοῦ κατ' αὐτήν (sc. τέχνην): attributive phrase after τοῦ τέλους, "the goal according to  
the art itself"

αὐτὴν ἐφίεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ δὴ δυνατὸν ἅμα χρηματίζεσθαι τε καὶ οὕτω μεγάλην ἐπασκεῖν τέχνην ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη καταφρονῆσαι θατέρου τὸν ἐπὶ θάτερον ὀρμήσαντα σφοδρότερον. ἄρ' οὖν ἔχομέν τινα τῶν νῦν ἀνθρώπων εἰπεῖν εἰς τοσοῦτον μόνον ἐφίεμενον χρημάτων κτήσεως, εἰς ὅσον ὑπηρετεῖν ἐξ αὐτῆς ταῖς ἀναγκαίαις χρεῖαις τοῦ σώματος; ἔστι τις ὁ δυνάμενος οὐ μόνον λόγῳ πλάσασθαι ἀλλ' ἔργῳ διδάξασθαι τοῦ

---

ἅμα: at the same time

ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity

ἄρα: particle introducing a question

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: possible, able to (+ *inf.*)

ἐπασκέω: to labour or toil at

ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two

ἐφίημι: (*mid.*) to aim at (+ *gen.*)

θάτερον (=τό ἕτερον): one of two

καταφρονέω: to despise

κτήσεις, -εως, ἡ: acquisition

ὀρμάω: to pursue

πλάττω: to form, shape, fashion

σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: zealous

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so much

ὑπηρετέω: to serve

χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

χρηματίζω: to make money

χρήμα, -ατος, τό: wealth

---

ἐφίεσθαι: pr. inf. mid. of ἐπι-ἵημι complementing ἐνδέχεται, “impossible to aim at” + gen.

οὐ δυνατὸν: “it is not possible to” + inf.

καταφρονῆσαι: ao. inf. of κατα-φρονέω after ἀνάγκη (sc. ἔστι), “but it is necessary for him to despise” + gen.

θατέρου (= τοῦ ἑτέρου): gen. after καταφρονῆσαι, “to despise one of the two”

τὸν ἐπὶ θάτερον ὀρμήσαντα: ao. part. act. acc. s. the subj. of καταφρονῆσαι, “the one pursuing one of the two to despise”

τινα: acc. dir. obj. of εἰπεῖν, “to say that there is someone”

εἰπεῖν: ao. inf. of λέγω complementing ἔχομέν, “are we able to say?”

εἰς τοσοῦτον μόνον: “only to such an extent”

ἐφίεμενον: pr. part. of ἐπι-ἵημι agreeing with τινα, “someone aiming at” + gen.

εἰς ὅσον ὑπηρετεῖν: correlative with τοσοῦτον above, “to whatever (is necessary) to serve” + dat.

ἐξ αὐτῆς: “from it” i.e. κτήσεως

ἔστι τις: “is there someone?”

πλάσασθαι: ao. inf. mid. of πλάττω after δυνάμενος, “able to fashion”

διαδείξασθαι: ao. inf. mid. of δια-δείκνυμι after δυνάμενος, “able to show plainly in deed”

κατὰ φύσιν πλούτου τὸν ὄρον ἄχρι τοῦ μὴ πεινῆν, μὴ διψῆν  
μὴ ριγοῦν προιόντα;

III. Καὶ μὴν εἴ τις γ' ἐστὶ τοιοῦτος, ὑπερόψεται μὲν  
Ἄρταξέρξου τε καὶ Περδίκκου καὶ τοῦ μὲν οὐδ' ἂν εἰς  
ὄψιν ἀφίκοιτό ποτε, τὸν δ' ἰάσεται μὲν νοσοῦντα νόσημα  
τῆς Ἴπποκράτους τέχνης δεόμενον, οὐ μὴν ἀξιώσει γε διὰ  
παντὸς συνείναι, θεραπεύσει δὲ τοὺς ἐν Κρανῶνι καὶ Θάσῳ  
καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις πολίχαις πένητας. ἀπολείψει δὲ Κώοις μὲν

ἀξιῶ: to think or deem worthy of

ἀπολείπω: to leave behind

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to

ἄχρι: up to (+ *gen.*)

δέω: to require

διψῶ: to thirst

θεραπεύω: to do service to (+ *dat.*)

ἰάομαι: to heal, cure

Κῶος, -α, -ον: from the island Cos, Coan

νοσέω: to be sick

ὄρος, ὄ: a boundary, landmark

ὄψις, ἡ: look, appearance, aspect

πεινάω: to be hungry

πένης, -ητος, ὄ: a poor man

πλοῦτος, ὄ: wealth

πολίχνη, ἡ: a small town

προέρχομαι: to approach, to go up to

ρίγῳ: to be cold, shiver from cold

σύνειμι: go associate with

ὑπεροράω: to look over, look down upon

κατὰ φύσιν: “according to nature”

τὸν ὄρον ... προιόντα: acc. part. in ind. st. after *διαδείξασθαι*, “to show *that the the limit approaches*”

τοῦ μὴ πεινῆν: art. inf. gen. obj. of *ἄχρι*, “up to the point of *not being hungry*, nor thirsting, nor being cold”

ὑπερόψεται: fut. of *ὑπερ-ὀράω*, “he will despise” + gen.

Ἄρταξέρξου: Artaxerxes I, Persian King from 465-424, whose request to Hippocrates for help with a plague was famously turned down because Artaxerxes was the enemy of Greece.

Περδίκκου: Perdiccas, King of Macedon from 454 to 413, whose request for help with a plague was granted, but Hippocrates refused to abide there.

τοῦ μὲν ... τὸν δέ: i.e., “the former ... the latter”

οὐδ' ἂν ἀφίκοιτό: ao. opt. pot. of *ἀφικνέομαι*, “he would not like to come”

ἰάσεται μὲν: fut., “while he will cure him”

νοσοῦντα: pr. part. acc. s. with internal acc. *νόσημα*, “him *being ill with a illness*” i.e., “having a disease”

δεόμενον: agreeing with *νόσημα*, “a disease *requiring*” + gen.

οὐ μὴν ἀξιώσει γε: “still he will certainly not deign” + inf.

συνείναι: pr. inf. of *συν-εἶμι* complementing *ἀξιώσει*, “deem *to associate with*”

Κρανῶνι καὶ Θάσῳ: Kranon and Thasos, relatively poor islands of Greece

ἀπολείψει: fut. of *ἀπο-λείπω*, “he will leave behind X (acc.) for Y (dat.)”

Κώοις: dat. of adv., “for the inhabitants of Cos,” the birthplace of Hippocrates

τοῖς πολίταις Πόλυβόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους μαθητάς, αὐτὸς δὲ πᾶσαν ἀλώμενος ἐφεξῆς διδάξει τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἕν' οὖν κρίνη τῇ πείρα τὰ ἐκ λόγου διδαχθέντα, χρὴ πάντως αὐτόπτην γενέσθαι πόλεων, τῆς πρὸς μεσημβρίαν ἐστραμμένης καὶ τῆς πρὸς ἄρκτον καὶ τῆς πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα καὶ τῆς πρὸς δυσμάς, ἰδεῖν δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐν κοίλῳ κειμένην καὶ τὴν ἐφ' ὑψηλοῦ καὶ τὴν ἐπακτοῖς ὕδασι χρωμένην καὶ τὴν πηγαίοις καὶ τὴν ὀμβρίοις καὶ τὴν ἐκ λιμνῶν καὶ ποταμῶν,

---

ἀλάομαι: to wander

ἀνίσχω: to rise

ἄρκτος, ἡ: a bear (the north star)

αὐτόπτης, -ου, ὁ: an eyewitness

ἀφικνέομαι: to visit

δυσμή, ἡ: setting (of the sun)

Ἑλλάς, -δος, ἡ: Greece

ἐπακτός, -ή, -όν: brought in, imported

ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun

κείμεαι: to lie, be situated

κοῖλον, τό: a valley

κρίνω: to pick out, choose

λίμνη, ἡ: a pool of standing water

λόγος: rational account

μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil

μεσημβριος, -α, -ον: southern

ὄμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain

πάντως: altogether

πείρα, -ας, ἡ: a trial, experiment

πηγαίος, -α, -ον: of or from a well

πολίτης, -ου, ὁ: a citizen

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

στρέφω: to turn

ὑδωρ, -ατος, τό: water

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised

χράομαι: to use (+ *dat.*)

χρή: it is necessary

---

Πόλυβόν: a famous student of Hippocrates

αὐτὸς δὲ: “but he himself”

ἀλώμενος: pr. part. of ἀλάομαι, “by wandering”

πᾶσαν ... τὴν Ἑλλάδα: acc. of extent, “the whole of Greece”

ἀφίξεται: fut. of ἀφικνέομαι, “he will visit,” here referring to the kind of observations gathered in the Hippocratic text *Airs, Waters, Places*, about which Galen wrote a commentary

ἕν' οὖν κρίνη: ao. subj. of κρίνω in purpose clause, “in order to judge”

τῇ πείρα: dat. of means, “by experiment”

τὰ... διδαχθέντα: ao. part. pas. of διδάσκω, “the things having been taught”

γενέσθαι: ao. inf. of γίγνομαι after χρὴ, “necessary to become an eyewitness”

τῆς... ἐστραμμένης: perf. part. of στρέφω, “of (the city) turned toward the south:” the participle and noun πόλις is understood with the three other directions that follow

ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα: “the rising sun”

ἰδεῖν: ao. inf. of ἴδω after χρὴ, “and necessary to see”

κειμένην: pr. part. with πόλιν understood, “the city lying in a valley”

χρωμένην: pr. part., “and (the city) using” + dat.

τὴν ἐκ λιμνῶν (sc. πόλιν ὕδασι): “the (city) using water) from pools”

ἀμελήσαι δὲ καὶ μηδ' εἴ τις ψυχροῖς ἄγαν ὕδασι μηδ' εἴ τις θερμοῖς χρῆται μηδ' εἰ νιτρώδεσι μηδ' εἰ στυπτηριώδεσιν ἢ τισιν ἑτέροις τοιούτοις, ἰδεῖν δὲ καὶ ποταμῶ μεγάλῳ πρόσσικον πόλιν καὶ λίμνη καὶ ὄρει καὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα νοῆσαι, περὶ ὧν αὐτὸς ἡμᾶς ἐδίδαξεν. ὥστ' οὐ μόνον ἀνάγκη χρημάτων καταφρονεῖν τὸν τοιοῦτον ἐσόμενον ἀλλὰ καὶ φιλόπονον ἐσχάτως ὑπάρχειν. καὶ μὴν οὐκ ἐνδέχεται φιλόπονον εἶναι τινὰ μεθυσκόμενον ἢ ἐμπιπλάμενον ἢ ἀφροδισίοις

ἄγαν: very, much  
 ἀμελέω: to disregard  
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity  
 ἀφροδίσιος, -α, -ον: of Aphrodite, sexual  
 ἐμπύπλημι: to fill  
 ἐνδέχομαι: to be possible  
 ἐσχάτος, -η, -ον: extreme  
 ἕτερος, -η, -ον: other  
 θάλαττα, ἡ: sea  
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm  
 καταφρονέω: to despise (+ *gen.*)  
 μεθύσκω: to make drunk, intoxicate  
 μηδέ: but not or and not, nor

νιτρώδης, -ες: like alkaline  
 νοέω: to observe, notice  
 ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill  
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream  
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city  
 πρόσσικος, -ον: neighboring to (+ *dat.*)  
 στυπτηριώδης, -ες: like an astringent  
 ὑπάρχω: to begin, become  
 ὕδωρ, -ατος, τό: water  
 φιλόπονος, -ον: industrious, diligent  
 χράομαι: to use (+ *dat.*)  
 χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: wealth  
 ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold

ἀμελήσαι: ao. inf. after *χρή*, “and it is necessary to *disregard*”

μηδ' εἴ τις ... μηδ' εἴ ... χρῆται: a series of ind. questions after *ἀμελήσαι*, “to disregard *neither whether* someone uses cold... *nor whether* someone uses hot..., etc.”

ἰδεῖν: ao. inf. of *εἶδον* also complementing *χρή*, “and it is necessary to *see*”

πρόσσικον πόλιν: “to see a city *neighboring to*” + *dat.*

νοῆσαι: ao. inf. of *νοέω* also after *χρή*, “necessary to *observe* all other such things”

αὐτὸς ἐδίδαξεν, “which he himself (i.e. Hippocrates) taught.

ὥστε ... ἀνάγκη (sc. *εἶναι* or *ἔστι*): so that it is necessary” + *inf.*

τὸν τοιοῦτον ἐσόμενον: fut. part. acc. s. m. the subj. of *καταφρονεῖν* and *ὑπάρχειν*, “that the one intending to become such a one”

ὑπάρχειν: *inf.* after *ἀνάγκη*, “necessary *that he become*”

οὐκ ἐνδέχεται: “it is not possible” + *inf.*

μεθυσκόμενον: pr. part. circumstantial, agreeing with *τινα*, the subj. of *εἶναι*, “while being drunk”

ἐμπιπλάμενον: pr. part. acc. s. m. of *ἐμπύπλημι* also agreeing with the acc. subj. of *εἶναι*, “someone *who is filling himself* (with food)”

προσκειμενον ἢ συλλήβδην εἰπεῖν αἰδοίοις καὶ γαστρὶ δουλεύοντα. σωφροσύνης οὖν φίλος ὥσπερ γε καὶ ἀληθείας ἑταῖρος ὃ γ' ἀληθῆς ἰατρὸς ἐξεύρηται. καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ τὴν λογικὴν μέθοδον ἀσκεῖν χρὴ χάριν τοῦ γνῶναι, πόσα τὰ πάντα κατ' εἶδη τε καὶ γένη νοσήμαθ' ὑπάρχει καὶ πῶς ἐφ' ἐκάστου ληπτέον ἔνδειξιν τιν' ἰαμάτων. ἢ δ' αὐτὴ μέθοδος ἦδε καὶ τὴν τοῦ σώματος αὐτὴν διδάσκει σύνθεσιν, τὴν τ' ἐκ τῶν πρώτων στοιχείων, ἃ δι' ἀλλήλων ὅλα κέκρται, καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῶν δευτέρων, τῶν αἰσθητῶν, ἃ δὴ καὶ ὁμοιομερῆ

---

αἰδοῖον, τό: genitals

αἰσθητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible by the senses

ἀληθεία, ἡ: truth

ἀληθῆς, -ές: unconcealed, true

ἀλλήλων: of one another

ἀσκεῖν: to practice, train

γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: a stomach, belly

γένος, -ους, τό: family, genus

δουλεύω: to be a slave to (+ *dat.*)

εἶδος, -ους, τό: species

ἐνδειξις, -εως, ἡ: an indication

ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover

ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ἴαμα, -ατος, τό: remedy, medicine

κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle

ληπτέος, -α, -ον: to be taken or accepted

μέθοδος, ἡ: a method

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὁμοιομερῆς, -ές: having parts like each other

πόσος, -η, -ον: how many?

πρόσκεμαι: to be situated or oriented toward (+ *dat.*)

στοιχείον, τό: element

συλλήβδην: adv. in sum, shortly

σύνθεσις, -εως, ἡ: composition

σωφροσύνη, ἡ: moderation, discretion

σῶμα, σώματος, τό: body

χάριν: for the sake of (+ *gen.*)

χρῆ: it is necessary (+ *inf.*)

---

συλλήβδην εἰπεῖν: a parenthetical phrase, “to speak in sum”

σωφροσύνης: obj. gen. with φίλος, “a friend of moderation”

ἐξεύρηται: perf. ind. of ἐξ-εὑρίσκω, “the true doctor is found to be”

καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ: indicating a climax, “furthermore”

τοῦ γνῶναι: ao. inf. art. of γινώσκω gen. after χάριν, “for the sake of knowing” + ind. quest.

πόσα ... ὑπάρχει: ind. quest., “knowing how many diseases there are”

πῶς ... ληπτέον: verbal adj. from λαμβάνω, “how it is necessary to take an indication”

ἐφ' ἐκάστου: “in each case”

τὴν τ' ἐκ τῶν ... καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῶν: attributive phrases modifying σύνθεσιν: “both from the first elements ... and from the second (level of elements)”

κέκρται: perf. pas. of κεράννυμι, “which are mixed completely”

τῶν αἰσθητῶν: “the perceptible (elements)”

ὁμοιομερῆ: nom. pred., “are called having like parts” i.e., “homogeneous”

προσαγορεύεται, καὶ τρίτην ἐπὶ ταύταις τὴν ἐκ τῶν ὀργανικῶν μορίων. ἀλλὰ καὶ τίς ἢ χρεία τῷ ζῳῷ τῶν εἰρημένων ἐκάστου καὶ τίς ἢ ἐνέργεια — δέον ἀπολαβεῖν καὶ ταῦτα μὴ ἀβασανίστως ἀλλὰ μετ' ἀποδείξεως πεπιστευθῆναι — πρὸς τῆς λογικῆς δῆπου διδάσκεται μεθόδου. τί δὴ οὖν ἔτι λείπεται πρὸς τὸ μὴ οὐκ εἶναι φιλόσοφον τὸν ἱατρόν, ὃς ἂν Ἰπποκράτους ἀξίως ἀσκήσῃ τὴν τέχνην; εἰ γάρ, ἵνα μὲν ἐξεύρῃ φύσιν σώματος καὶ νοσημάτων διαφορὰς καὶ ἰαμάτων ἐνδείξεις, ἐν τῇ λογικῇ θεωρίᾳ γεγυμνάσθαι προσήκει, ἵνα δὲ φιλοπόνως

ἀβασανίστως, -ον: not examined, uncritical  
 ἀξίως, -ία, -ον: worthy  
 ἀπολαμβάνω: to receive from another  
 ἀπόδειξις, -εως, ἡ: logical demonstration  
 ἀσκέω: to practice, train  
 γυμνάζω: to train, exercise  
 δῆπου: doubtless  
 διαφορὰ, ἡ: difference, distinction  
 ἐνδείξις, -εως, ἡ: an indication  
 ἐνέργεια, ἡ: action, operation, energy  
 ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover

ζῳον, τό: a living being, animal  
 ἴαμα, -ατος, τό: remedy, medicine  
 λείπω: to leave, quit  
 μῶριον, τό: a part, portion  
 ὀργανικός, -ή, -όν: serving as instruments, organic  
 πιστεύω: to trust, believe in  
 προσαγορεύω: to name  
 προσήκω: to be fitting (+ *inf.*)  
 φιλόπονος, -ον: industrious, diligent  
 φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural condition  
 χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

καὶ τρίτην (sc. σύνθεσιν): “and the third (level of composition)”  
 τὴν ἐκ τῶν ὀργανικῶν μορίων: attrib. phrase with σύνθεσιν understood, “the composition *from organic parts*”  
 τίς ἢ χρεία ... τίς ἢ ἐνέργεια: these vivid ind. questions are the subj. of διδάσκεται, “what the use is ... what the function is”  
 τῶν εἰρημένων: perf. part. of λέγω, “of each of *the things mentioned*”  
 δέον: pr. part. n. acc. in an acc. abs., “it being necessary” + inf.  
 ἀπολαβεῖν ... πιστώσασθαι: ao. inf. of ἀπο-λαμβάνω and πιστεύω after δέον, these phrases being a parenthetical remark, “necessary to receive and to have believed”  
 μὴ ἀβασανίστως: “not untortured” i.e., “not untested”  
 διδάσκεται: “these questions *are taught*” i.e. are to be learned  
 τὸ μὴ οὐκ εἶναι: art. inf., “towards *the not being*,” the subject of the inf. is τὸν ἱατρόν and φιλόσοφον is the predicate  
 ὃς ἂν ... ἀσκήσῃ: ao. subj. of ἀσκέω in gen. rel. clause, “whoever would practice”  
 εἰ γάρ ... προσήκει: simple cond., “for if it is fitting” + inf.  
 ἵνα μὲν ἐξεύρῃ: ao. subj. of ἐξ-εὑρίσκω in purpose clause, “in order to discover”  
 γεγυμνάσθαι: perf. inf. of γυμνάζω after προσήκει, “it is fitting to train”  
 ἵνα δὲ ... παραμῆνη: pr. subj. also in a purpose clause, “in order to remain hardworking”

τῆ τούτων ἀσκήσει παραμένη, χρημάτων τε καταφρονεῖν καὶ σωφροσύνην ἀσκεῖν, πάντ' ἂν ἤδη τῆς φιλοσοφίας ἔχοι τὰ μέρη, τό τε λογικὸν καὶ τὸ φυσικὸν καὶ τὸ ἠθικόν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ δέος γε, μὴ χρημάτων καταφρονῶν καὶ σωφροσύνην ἀσκῶν ἀδικόν τι πράξει· πάντα γάρ, ἃ τολμῶσιν ἀδίκως ἄνθρωποι, φιλοχρηματίας ἀναπειθούσης ἢ γοητευούσης ἡδονῆς πράττουσιν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὰς ἄλλας ἀρετὰς ἀναγκαῖον ἔχειν αὐτόν· σύμπασαι γὰρ ἀλλήλαις ἔπονται καὶ οὐχ οἷόν τε μίαν ἠντινοῦν λαβόντι μὴ οὐχὶ καὶ τὰς ἄλλας ἀπάσας εὐθὺς

---

ἀδικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust

ἀλλήλαις: to one another

ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary

ἀναπείθω: to bring over, convince

ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, virtue

ἀσκέω: to practice, train

ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: practice, training

γοητεύω: to bewitch, beguile

δέος, τό: fear

ἔπομαι: to follow (+ *dat.*)

ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure

ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral

καταφρονέω: to think down on, despise (+ *gen.*)

οἷον τε ἔστι: it is possible (+ *inf.*)

παραμένω: to remain

πράττω: to do

σύμπας: all together

σωφροσύνη, ἡ: moderation, discretion

τολμάω: to undertake, take heart

φιλοχρηματία, ἡ: love of money

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: physical

χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: wealth

---

καταφρονεῖν καὶ ἀσκεῖν (sc. προσήκει): “it is fitting to despise and to practice”

ἂν ... ἔχοι: pr. opt. in fut. less vivid apodosis, “then he would have all the parts”

οὐ γὰρ δὴ δέος γε: “there will certainly be no fear”

μὴ ... πράξει: ao. subj. of πράττω in clause of fearing, “fear that he will do something wrong”

καταφρονῶν, ἀσκῶν: pr. part. with conditional force, “if despising, practicing”

ἀναπειθούσης ἢ γοητευούσης: pr. part. in gen. abs., “love of money persuading or pleasure beguiling”

ἔχειν: pr. inf. after ἀναγκαῖον (sc. ἔστι), “it is necessary that he have”

σύμπασαι (sc. ἀρεταί): “all virtues”

οὐχ οἷόν τε (sc. ἔστι): “it is not possible” + inf.

ἠντινοῦν: ἡν-τινα-οῦν, “anyone (virtue) whatever”

λαβόντι: ao. part. dat. s. with οἷόν τε ἔστι, “impossible for the man having”

μὴ οὐχὶ ... ἔχειν: inf. after οὐχ οἷόν τε, “impossible not to have”



ἀκολουθούσας ἔχειν ὥσπερ ἐκ μιᾶς μηρίνθου δεδεμένας.  
καὶ μὴν εἴ γε πρὸς τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς μάθησιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν  
ἐφεξῆς ἄσκησιν ἀναγκαῖα τοῖς ἰατροῖς ἐστὶν ἢ φιλοσοφία,  
δηλον ὡς, ὅστις ἂν ἄριστος ἰατρὸς ᾖ, πάντως οὗτός ἐστι  
καὶ φιλόσοφος. οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' ὅτι πρὸς τὸ χρῆσθαι καλῶς  
τῇ τέχνῃ φιλοσοφίας δεῖ τοῖς ἰατροῖς, ἀποδείξεως ἡγοῦμαι  
τινος χρῆζειν ἑωρακότας γεπολλάκις ὡς φαρμακεῖς εἰσιν,  
οὐκ ἰατροὶ καὶ χρῶνται τῇ τέχνῃ πρὸς τὸναντίον ἢ πέφυκεν  
οἱ φιλοχρήματοι.

---

ἀκολουθέω: to follow

ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

ἄσκησις, -εως, ἡ: practice, training

δεῖ: it is necessary

δέω: to bind, tie

δηλος, -ον: obvious

ἐναντίον, τό: the opposite

ἐφεξῆς: one after another

ἡγέομαι: to consider, think

μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning

μηρίνθος, -ου, ἡ: a cord, line, string

ὁράω: to see

πάντως: altogether

πολλάκις: many times, often, oft

φαρμακεῖς, -έως, ὁ: a poisoner, druggist

φιλοχρήματος, -ον: loving money

φύω: to produce naturally

χράομαι: to use (+ *dat.*), practice

χρήζω: to lack, have need of (+ *gen.*)

---

ἀκολουθούσας: pr. part. acc. pl. f., “the others *following*”

δεδεμένας: perf. part. of δέω, “since all are tied together”

καὶ μὴν εἴ γε: “and indeed if it is the case”

ἐξ ἀρχῆς ... ἐφεξῆς: attributive phrases, “from the start ... subsequent”

δηλον ὡς ... ἐστὶ: “it is clear that this one is”

ὅστις ἂν ᾖ: pr. subj. of εἶμι in gen. rel. clause, “*whoever is* the best doctor”

οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ ... ἡγοῦμαι: “nor do I think” + inf.

ὅτι ... δεῖ: “that there is need of X (*gen.*) for Y (*dat.*)”

πρὸς τὸ χρῆσθαι: art. inf., “for the practicing” + *dat.*

χρήζειν: inf. after ἡγοῦμαι with the preceding ὅτι clause as its subj., “think *that this (statement) needs*” + *gen.*

ἑωρακότας: perf. part. acc. pl. m. of ὁράω, causal, , “*since having seen* many times”; although not agreeing with any word in the sentence

τὸναντίον (=τό ἐναντίον) ἡ: “the opposite from”

πέφυκεν: perf. of φύω, “from *what it was naturally fitted*”

IV. Πότερον οὖν ὑπὲρ ὀνομάτων ἔτι διενεχθήσῃ καὶ ληρήσεις ἐρίζων, ἐγκρατῆ μὲν καὶ σώφρονα καὶ χρημάτων κρείττονα καὶ δίκαιον ἀξιῶν εἶναι τὸν ἰατρόν, οὐ μὴν φιλόσοφόν γε, καὶ φύσιν μὲν γινώσκειν σωμάτων καὶ ἐνεργείας ὀργάνων καὶ χρείας μορίων καὶ διαφορὰς νοσημάτων καὶ θεραπειῶν ἐνδείξεις, οὐ μὴν ἡσκησθαί γε κατὰ τὴν λογικὴν θεωρίαν; ἢ τὰ πράγματα συγχωρήσας ὑπὲρ ὀνομάτων αἰδεσθήσῃ διαφέρεσθαι; καὶ μὴν ὀψὲ μὲν ἄμεινον δὲ νῦν

---

αἰδέομαι: to be ashamed to (+ *inf.*)

ἀμείνων, -ον: better

ἄξιος, -ον: weighing as much

ἀσκέω: to practice, train

διαφέρω: to differ, quarrel

διαφορὰ, ἡ: difference, distinction

δίκαιος: well-ordered, civilised

ἐγκρατής, -ές: possessing self-control

ἐνδείξις, -εως, ἡ: an indication

ἐνεργεία, ἡ: action, operation

ἐρίζω: to wrangle, quarrel

ἦ: a conjunction indicating disapproval

θεραπεία, ἡ: a service, therapy

κρείττων, -ον: better than (+ *gen.*)

ληρέω: to speak foolishly

μόριον, τό: a piece, part

ὄνομα, -ματα, τό: name, word (opposed to *πράγμα*)

ὄργανον, τό: an organ

ὀψέ: late

πότερος, -α, -η, -ον: whether of the two?

πράγμα, -ατος, τό: an actual fact or deed

συγχωρέω: to come together, agree

σώφρων, -ον: of sound mind

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: body

φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural condition

χρεία, ἡ: use, advantage, service

χρήμα, -ατος, τό: wealth

---

πότερον ... ἦ: each particle precedes one of two alternative propositions

διενεχθήσῃ: fut. pas. 2 s. of *δια-φέρω* addressing Syrus again. , “will you either quarrel?”

ληρήσεις: fut. of *ληρέω*, “and you will speak nonsense”

ἐγκρατῆ: acc. pred., “the doctor is *self-possessed*”

ἀξιῶν: pr. part., “(you) *deeming it worthy* that the doctor is”

οὐ μὴν φιλόσοφόν γε: acc. pred., “but not that he be a philosopher”

γινώσκειν: pr. inf. also complementing *ἀξιῶν*, “worthy *that he know*”

οὐ μὴν ἡσκησθαί γε: perf. inf. mid. of *ἀσκέω*, also complementing *ἀξιῶν*, “but that he not train himself”

συγχωρήσας: ao. part. nom. s. m. of *συν-χωρέω*, “*while having agreed* with respect to the substance”

αἰδεσθήσῃ: fut. pas. 2 s., “*will you be shameful enough* to disagree?”

καὶ μὴν ὀψὲ μὲν: “surely it is too late for that!”

ἄμεινον (sc. *ἔστι*): “it is better that you” + *inf.*

γοῦν σωφρονήσαντά σε μὴ καθάπερ κολοιδὸν ἢ κόρακα περὶ  
 φωνῶν ζυγομαχεῖν ἀλλ' αὐτῶν τῶν πραγμάτων σπουδάζειν  
 τὴν ἀλήθειαν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτό γ' ἂν ἔχοις εἰπεῖν, ὡς ὑφάντης  
 μὲν τις ἢ σκυτοτόμος ἀγαθὸς ἄνευ μαθήσεώς τε καὶ ἀσκήσε-  
 ως οὐκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο, δίκαιος δέ τις ἢ σώφρων ἢ ἀποδει-  
 κτικὸς ἢ δεινὸς περὶ φύσιν ἐξαιφνίδιον ἀναφανήσεται μῆτε  
 διδασκάλους χρησάμενος μῆτ' αὐτὸς ἐπασκήσας ἑαυτόν. εἰ  
 τοίνυν καὶ τοῦτ' ἀναίσχυντον καὶ θάτερον οὐ περὶ πραγμάτων

---

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good

ἀναίσχυντος, -ον: shameless, impudent

ἀναφαίνομαι: to appear

ἄνευ: without (+ *gen.*)

ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν: affording proof, logical

ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: practice, training

γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way

δεινός, -ή, -όν: awesome

διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master

δίκαιος, -ον: well-ordered, just

ἐξαιφνίδιον: adv. suddenly

ἐπασκέω: to labour, practice

ζυγομαχέω: to struggle, quarrel

θάτερον (= τό ἕτερον): the other (of two)

καθάπερ: just like

κολοιδός, ὁ: a jackdaw ( a bird)

κόραξ, -ακος, ὁ: crow

μάθησις, -εως, ἡ: learning

μῆτε: and not

πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό: a deed (as opposed to mere words)

σκυτοτόμος, ὁ: a cobbler

σπουδάζω: to be eager for, to strive for

σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind

σώφρων, -ον: of sound mind, sane

τοίνυν: therefore, accordingly

ὑφάντης, -ου, ὁ: a weaver

φύσις, ἡ: nature, natural condition

φωνή, ἡ: sound (of a word, as opposed to its meaning)

χράομαι: to make use of (+ *dat.*)

---

σωφρονήσαντα: ao. part. agreeing with σε: “once you have become sensible”

μὴ ... ζυγομαχεῖν: pr. inf. after ἄμεινον, “not to quarrel”

ἀλλὰ ... σπουδάζειν: also after ἄμεινον, “but to strive for” + acc.

ἂν ἔχοις: pot. opt., “you wouldn’t be able to” + inf.

ὡς ... οὐκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο: ao. opt. pot. of γίγνομαι in noun cl. in apposition to τοῦτο, “to say this, *namely, that* a weaver *would ever be good*”

ἀναφανήσεται: fut. mid. of ἀνα-φαίνω, “but that some doctor *will appear* who is just”

μῆτε χρησάμενος: ao. part. conditional, “if he has not made use of” + dat.

ἐπασκήσας: ao. part. conditional, “if not having practiced”

εἰ ... τοῦτ' ἀναίσχυντον: “if this (argument) is shameful”

καὶ θάτερον ... ἐρίζοντος: pr. part. gen., “and if the other (argument) is of someone quibbling”

ἐστὶν ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ ὀνομάτων ἐρίζοντος, φιλοσοφητέον ἡμῖν  
ἐστίν, εἴπερ Ἴπποκράτους ἀληθῶς ἐσμεν ζηλωταί, κἂν τοῦτο  
ποιῶμεν, οὐδὲν κωλύει μὴ παραπλησίους ἀλλὰ καὶ βελτίους  
αὐτοῦ γενέσθαι μανθάνοντας μὲν, ὅσα καλῶς ἐκείνῳ γέγρα-  
πται, τὰ λείποντα δ' αὐτοὺς ἐξευρίσκοντας.

---

ἀληθῶς: truly

βελτίων, -ον: better

γράφω: to write

εἴπερ: if indeed

ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover

ἐρίζω: to strive, quibble, quarrel

ζηλωτής, -οῦ, ὁ: an emulator, zealous admirer

κωλύω: to prevent from (+ *inf.*)

λείπω: to leave, quit

ὄνομα, τό: a name

παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: nearly resembling

---

φιλοσοφητέον: verbal adj. in impersonal construction, “it is necessary for us to follow philosophy”

κἂν (=καὶ ἂν) τοῦτο ποιῶμεν: pr. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “if we do this”

μὴ ... γενέσθαι: ao. inf. after κωλύει, “nothing prevents us *from becoming* as great”

αὐτοῦ: gen. of comp. after βελτίους, “but even better *than him*”

μανθάνοντας: pr. part. acc. pl. instr., “by learning”

ἐκείνῳ: dat. of agent, “has been written *by that one* (i.e. Hippocrates)

τὰ λείποντα: pr. part. n. pl. acc., “but the rest”

αὐτοὺς (sc. ἡμᾶς): “*ourselves* discovering

ἐξευρίσκοντας: pr. part. acc. pl. instr., “*by discovering*”



## List of Verbs



## List of Verbs

The following is a list of verbs that have some irregularity in their conjugation. Contract verbs and other verbs that are completely predictable (-ίζω, -εύω, etc.) are generally not included. The principal parts of the Greek verb in order are 1. Present 2. Future 3. Aorist 4. Perfect Active 5. Perfect Middle 6. Aorist Passive, 7. Future Passive. We have not included the future passive below, since it is very rare in Galen. For many verbs not all forms are attested or are only poetic. Verbs are alphabetized under their main stem, followed by various compounds that occur in the three Galenic treatises, with a brief definition. A dash (-) before a form means that it occurs only or chiefly with a prefix. The list is based on the list of verbs in H. Smythe, *A Greek Grammar*.

ἀγγέλλω: to announce, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἤγγελκα, ἤγγεμαι, ἤγγέλθην  
ἐπαγγέλλω: to tell, proclaim, announce

ἄγω: to lead ἄξω, 2 *ao.* ἤγαγον, ἤχα, ἤγμαι, ἤχθην  
ἀπάγω: to lead away, divert  
εἰσάγω: to introduce  
προάγω: to lead forth, advance, produce  
προεισάγω: to introduce before

αἰρέω: to take, *mid.* choose: αἰρήσω, 2 *ao.* εἶλον, ἤρηκα, ἤρημαι, ἤρέθην  
ἀφαιρέω: to take from, take away from  
διαιρέω: to divide, separate, distinguish

αἴρω: to lift ἀρώ, ἤρα, ἤρκα, ἤρμαι, ἤρθην  
καθαίρω: to purge

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive αἰσθήσομαι, 2 *ao.* ἤσθόμην, ἤσθημαι

ἀκούω: to hear ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, 2 *perf.* ἀκήκοα, 2 *plurpf.* ἤκηκόη or ἀκηκόη, ἤκούσθην

ἀλλάττω: to change, ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, -ήλαχα, ἤλλαγμαί, ἤλάχθην  
ὑπαλλάττω: to alter, change  
ἀπαλλάττω: to set free, release  
ἀμαρτάνω: to fail, go wrong ἀμαρτήσομαι, 2 *ao.* ἤμαρτον, ἤμάρτηκα, ἤμάρτημαι, ἤμαρτήθην



**ἄρχω:** to be first, begin *ἄρξω, ἤρξα, ἤργμαι, ἤρχθην*

**ὑπάρχω:** to begin, to be from the beginning

**αὐξάνω:** to increase *αὕξω, ἠύξησα, ἠύξηκα, ἠύξημαι, ἠύξήθην*

**ἀφικνέομαι:** to arrive at *ἀφ-ίξομαι, 2 ao. ἀφ-ικόμην, ἀφ-ἔγμαι*

**βαίνω:** to step, go *βήσομαι, 2 ao. ἔβην, βέβηκα*

**ἐπιβαίνω:** to go upon, trample

**μεταβαίνω:** to pass from one place to another

**συμβαίνω:** to come together, come to pass

**βάλλω:** to throw *βαλῶ, 2 ao. ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην*

**ἀναβάλλω:** to throw up, defer

**διαβάλλω:** to attack, slander

**προβάλλω:** to set before, challenge

**συμβάλλω:** to throw together, contribute

**ὑπερβάλλω:** to throw beyond, surpass

**βλάπτω:** to hurt, injure: *βλάψω, ἔβλαιψα, βέβλαφα, βέβλαμμαι, ἐβλάφθην*  
and 2 ao. *ἐβλάβην*

**βλέπω:** to look at *βλέψομαι, ἔβλειψα*

**ἀποβλέπω:** to look upon, regard, attend

**βούλομαι:** to wish *βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην*

**γελᾶω:** to laugh *γελάσομαι, ἐέλασα, ἐελάσθην*

**γίγνομαι:** to become *γενήσομαι, 2 ao. ἐγενόμην, 2 perf. γέγονα, γεγένημαι, ἐγενήθην*

**παραγίγνομαι:** to be near, attend upon

**γιγνώσκω:** to know *γνώσομαι, ἔγνωι, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην*

**ἀναγιγνώσκω:** to read, to circulate (by reading)

**καταγιγνώσκω:** to judge

**προγιγνώσκω:** to know beforehand, to make a prognosis about

**γράφω:** to write *γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην*

**ἐπιγράφω:** to write upon, inscribe, dedicate, entitle

Three Treatises

προσγράφω: to add in writing

συγγράφω: to write, compose

ὑπογράφω: to entitle, write below

δείκνυμι: to show δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαi, ἐδείχθην

ἐνδείκνυμι: to mark, point out, demonstrate

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to show, exhibit

δέομαι: to want, ask: δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην. (from δέω 2)

δέχομαι: to receive δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαi, -εδέχθην

ἐνδέχομαι: to receive, accept

δέω (1): to bind δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην

δέω (2): to need, lack, ask (*mid.*), δεήσω, ἔδεησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, *impers.* δεῖ it is necessary

διδάσκω: to teach, (*mid.*) learn διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαi, ἐδιδάχθην

ἐκδιδάσκω: to teach thoroughly

ἐπεκδιδάσκω: to teach in addition

δίδωμι: to give δώσω, 1 *ao.* ἔδωκα in *s.*, 2 *ao.* in *pl.* ἔδομεν, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην

διαδίδωμι: to distribute

ἐκδίδωμι: to circulate, publish

δοκέω: to think, seem δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαi

δράω: to do δράσω, ἔδρασα, δέδρακα, δέδραμαι, ἐδράσθην

ἐθέλω: to wish ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα

εἶδον I saw: see ὀράω

εἶμί: to be, *fut.* ἔσομαι, *imperf./ao.* ἦν

πάρεμι: to be present, stand by

εἶμι: I will go: see ἔρχομαι

ελαύνω: to drive, ἐλώ, ἤλασα, -ελήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην

ἐξελαύνω: to drive out from

ελέγχω: to refute ἐλέγξω, ἤλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι, ἠλέγχθην

ἐξελέγχω: to test, refute

ἔπομαι: to follow ἔψομαι, 2 *ao.* ἐσπόμην

ἔρχομαι: to come or go to: *fut.* εἶμι, 2 *ao.* ἦλθον, 2 *perf.* ἐλήλυθα

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of

μετέρχομαι: to go after, seek, pursue

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

ἐρωτάω: to ask ἐρήσομαι, 2 *ao.* ἠρόμην

εὐρίσκω: to find εὐρήσω, 2 *ao.* ἠύρον or εὐρον, ἠύρηκα or εὐρηκα, εὐρημαι, εὐρέθην

ἐξευρίσκω: to find out, discover

προσεξευρίσκω: to discover in addition, find out besides

ἔχω: to have ἔξω, 2 *ao.* ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα, *imperf.* εἶχον.

ἀνέχω: to hold back

ἀπέχω: to keep off, hold back

κατέχω: to hold fast, possess

παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply

περιέχω: to encompass, embrace, surround

προσέχω: to hold to

ζάω: to live ζήσω, ἔζησα, ἔζηκα

ἡγέομαι: to go before, lead the way ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἡγημαι

ἐξηγέομαι: to explain

προηγέομαι: to be the leader, precede

θαυμάζω: to wonder, admire, *fut.* θαυμάσομαι

θνήσκω: to die, θανοῦμαι, 2 *ao.* -έθανον, τέθνηκα

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

ἵημι: to let go, relax, to send forth ἥσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην

ἐφίημι: to send to, permit; (mid) to aim at + *gen.*

*Three Treatises*

**ἵστημι:** to make to stand, set **στήσω** shall set, **ἕστησα** set, caused to stand, 2  
*ao.* **ἕστην** stood, 1 *perf.* **ἕστηκα** stand, *plur.* **εἰστήκη** stood, **ἐστάθη**

**καθίστημι:** to set down, place

**συνίστημι:** to set together, combine, unite

**καίω:** to burn **καύσω**, **ἔκαυσα**, **-κέκαυκα**, **κέκαυμαι**, **ἐκαύθην**

**καλέω:** to call **καλώ**, **ἐκάλεσα**, **κέκληκα**, **κέκλημαι**, **ἐκλήθην**

**ἀποκαλέω:** to call back, recall, disparage

**ἐγκαλέω:** to call in, accuse

**μετακαλέω:** to summon

**παρακαλέω:** to call to, summon, invite

**προσεγκαλέω:** accuse besides + *dat.*

**κάμνω:** to labor, be weary or sick: **καμοῦμαι**, 2 *ao.* **ἔκαμον**,

**κέκηκα**, **κεράννυμι:** to mix, **ἐκέρασα**, **κέκραμαι**, **ἐκραάθην**

**κλέπτω:** to steal: **κλέψω**, **ἔκλεψα**, **κέκλοφα**, **κέκλεμμαι**, **ἐκλέφθην** or

**ἐκλάπτην κομίζω:** to take care of **κομῶ**, **ἐκόμισα**, **κεκόμικα**, **κεκόμισμαι**,  
**ἐκομίσθην**

**κρίνω:** to decide **κρινῶ**, **ἔκρινα**, **κέκρικα**, **κέκριμαι**, **ἐκρίθην**

**ἀποκρίνομαι:** to answer

**διακρίνω:** to separate, distinguish

**κτάομαι:** to acquire **κτῆσομαι**, **ἐκτησάμην**, **κέκτημαι** possess

**λαμβάνω:** to take **λήψομαι**, **ἔλαβον**, **εἴληφα**, **εἴλημμαι**, **ἐλήφθην**

**παραλαμβάνω:** to take in addition

**ὑπολαμβάνω:** to undertake, to understand

**λανθάνω:** to escape notice **λήσω**, **ἔλαθον**, **λέληθα**

**λέγω:** to speak **ἔρέω**, **εἶπον**, **εἶρηκα**, **λέλεγμαι**, **ἐλέχθην** and **ἐρρήθην**

**ἀναλέγω:** to read through

**διαλέγομαι:** to converse, discourse with

**ἐκλέγω:** to pick or choose

**προλέγω:** to pick out, choose, prefer

**συνλέγω:** to collect, gather

**λείπω:** to leave **λείψω**, **ἔλιπον**, **λέλοιπα**, **λέλειμμαι**, **ἐλείφθην**

**ἀπολείπω:** to leave behind

**καταλείπω:** to leave behind

**παραλείπω:** to leave behind

**μανθάνω:** to learn **μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα**

**ἐκμανθάνω:** to learn thoroughly

**μεθύσκω:** to make drunk **ἐμέθυσσα, ἐμεθύστην**

**μέμφομαι:** to blame **μέμφομαι, ἐμεμφάμην, ἐμέμφθην**

**μένω:** to stay **μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα**

**καταμένω:** to stay

**παραμένω:** to remain

**περιμένω:** to wait for, await

**μιμνήσκω:** to remind, *mid.* to remember, **-μνήσω, -έμνησα, μέμνημαι, ἐμνήστην**

**νοέω:** to think, perceive, **νοοῦμαι, ἔνωσα, νένωκα, νένωμαι**

**ἀγνοέω:** not to know

**ἐπινοέω:** to think of, imagine

**ὑπονοέω:** to suspect

**οἶομαι:** to suppose **ᾤήθην imperf. ᾤμην**

[**ὄλλυμι:** to destroy **ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -ολώλεκα, -όλωλα**]

**ἀπόλλυμι:** to destroy utterly, kill

**ὁράω:** to see **ὄψομαι, 2 ao. εἶδον, ἑώρακα and ἐώρακα, ᾤφθην, imperf. ἐώρων**

**ὑπεροράω:** to look down upon, despise

**ὀρέγω:** to reach **ὀρέξω, ᾤρεξα, ὠρέχθην**

**πάσχω:** to experience **πείσομαι, 2 ao. ἔπαθον, 2 perf. πέπονθα**

**πείθω:** to persuade **πείσω, ἔπεισα, 2 perf. πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπέισθην**

**ἀναπείθω:** to bring over, convince

**πίπτω:** to fall **πεσοῦμαι, 2 ao. ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα**

**ἐκπίπτω:** to fall out, happen

**ἐμπίπτω:** to fall upon or into

*Three Treatises*

πεινάω: to hunger, πεινήσω, ἐπείνησα, πεπαίνηκαπέμπω: to convey, send, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, 2 perf. πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμψθην

πιπράσκω: to sell, πέπρακα, πέπραμαι, ἐπράθην. πωλέω and ἀποδίδομαι are used for future and aorist

πλάττω: to form, ἔπλασα, πέπλασμαι, ἐπλάσθην

πράττω: to do, πράξω, ἔπραξα, 2 perf. πέπραχα, πέπραγμαι, ἐπράχθην

πυνθάνομαι: to learn, πεύσομαι, 2 ao. ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι

σημαίνω: to indicate, σημανῶ, ἐσήμηνα, σεσήμασμαι, ἐσημάνθην  
ἐπισημαίνω: to indicate in addition

σκώπτω: to mock, σκώψομαι, ἔσκωψα, ἐσκώψθην

σπουδάζω: to be eager, σπουδάσομαι, ἐσπούδασα, ἐσπούδακα

στέλλω: to send, στελῶ, ἔστειλα, -έσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, ἐσταλην  
συστέλλω: to draw together, compress

στρέφω: to turn στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστρέφθην

σφάλλω: to trip up, σφαλῶ, ἔσφηλα, ἔσφαλμαι, ἐσφάλην

σώζω: to save σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, ἐσώθην  
διασώζω: to preserve

τάττω: to arrange, τάξω, ἔταξα, 2 perf. τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην

τείνω: to stretch τεινῶ, -έτεινα, -τέτακα, τέταμαι, -ετάθην  
ἐκτείνω: to stretch out, extend

τέμνω: to cut τεμῶ, 2 ao. ἔτεμον, -τέμηκα, τέμημαι, ἐτμήθην  
ἀνατέμνω: to cut open, dissect

τεύχω: to prepare, make: τεύξω, ἔτευξα, 2 perf. τέτευχα, , τέτυγμαι, ἐτύχθην

τίθημι: to place θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι (but usu. κείμαι), ἐτέθην  
ἀνατίθημι: to set up, set in place

προστίθημι: to put to, put forth, impose

τρέπω: to turn τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, ἐτρέπην  
ἀποτρέπω: to turn away from, oppose

**ἐκτρέπω:** to turn aside

**περιτρέπω:** to reverse, contradict

**προτρέπω:** to urge forwards

**τρέφω:** to nourish *θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, 2 perf. τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτρέφην*

**ἀνατρέφω:** to educate

**τρίβω:** to rub *τρίψω, ἔτριψα, 2 perf. τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην*

**διατρίβω:** to spend time

**κατατρίβω:** to spend time

**ὑποδιατρίβω:** to delay a little

**τυγχάνω:** to happen *τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα, τέτυγμαι, ἐτύχθην*

**φαίνω:** to show, appear (*mid.*), *φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην*

**ἀποφαίνω:** to show forth, display, assert, declare

**φέρω:** to bear, carry, *οἴσω, 1 ao. ἤνεγκα, 2 ao. ἤνεγκον, 2 perf. ἐνήνοχα, perf. mid. ἐνήνεγμαι, ao. pass. ἤνέχθην*

**διαφέρω:** to differ, carry across

**ἐπιφέρω:** to bring along

**φεύγω:** to flee, *φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα*

**φθάνω:** to anticipate, *φθήσομαι, ἔφθασα, ἔφθην*

**φθείρω:** to corrupt, *φθερῶ, ἔφθειρα, ἔφθαρκα, 2 perf. -έφθορα, ἔφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην*

**διαφθείρω:** to destroy utterly

**φυλάττω:** to guard, *φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην*

**φύω:** to bring forth, *φύσω, ἔφυσσα, 2 ao. ἔφυν, πέφυκα*

**ἐκφύω:** to generate from

**χέω:** to pour, *fut. χέω, ao. ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην*

**χράομαι:** to use, *χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην*

**ψεύδω:** to lie, *ψεύσω, ἔψευσσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην*







Proper Names



## Proper Names

The following is a list of the proper names occurring in these three Galenic treatises, and pages on which they occur in our text.

- Adrastus of Aphrodisias (Ἄδραστος):** (2<sup>nd</sup> C CE), a Peripatetic philosopher; p. 70.
- Aeficianus (Αἰφικιανός):** a pupil of the anatomist Quintus; p. 101.
- Aristophanes (Ἀριστοφάνης):** (466-386 BCE) only poet of old comedy whose works have survived; p. 79.
- Aspasius (Ἀσπασίος):** (80-150 CE) a Peripatetic philosopher, whose commentary on the Nicomachean Ethics is the earliest surviving commentary on Aristotle; p. 70.
- Bassus (Βάσσος):** the addressee of *On my Own Books*, otherwise unknown, p. 3.
- Boethus (Βόηθος):** an important patron of Galen mentioned many times as a true intellectual; pp. 13, 19, 29.
- Celsus (Κέλσος):** (2<sup>nd</sup> C CE) an Epicurean philosopher; p. 78.
- Chrysippus of Soli (Χρυσίππος):** (3<sup>rd</sup> C BCE) a famous Stoic philosopher; pp. 70, 77.
- Clitomachus of Carthage (Κλειτόμαχος):** (187-110 BCE) a member of the skeptic school; p. 72.
- Cratinus (Κρατίνος):** (519-422 BCE), a famous poet of Old Comedy
- Epictetus (Ἐπίκτητος):** (55-135 CE) a famous Stoic philosopher; p. 72.
- Epicurus (Ἐπίκουρος):** (341-270 BCE) founder of his eponymous school of philosophy; p. 78.
- Erasistratus (Ἐρασίστρατος):** (304 – 250 BCE) a famous anatomist at Alexandria
- Eudemus of Rhodes (Εὐδήμος):** (370-300 BCE) a student of Aristotle and editor of his works; p. 69.
- Eugeniaios (Εὐγενιανός):** the addressee of *On the Order of my Own Books*, otherwise unknown; p. 83.
- Eupolis (Εὐπόλις):** (446-411 BCE) a famous poet of “old comedy,” which was famous for its political criticism; p. 79.

- Favorinus of Arelate (Φαβωρίνος):** a sophist and philosopher contemporary of Galen; p. 72.
- Herophilus (Ἡρόφιλος):** (335–280 BCE) a famous anatomist at Alexandria, p. 47.
- Hippocrates of Cos (Ἱπποκράτης):** (460-370 BCE) the most famous doctor of antiquity
- Julian the Methodist (Ἰουλιανός):** a teacher of Galen at Alexandria; pp. 60, 62.
- Lycus (Λύκος):** a student of Quintus and author of an anatomical work that Galen summarizes critically; p. 101.
- Marinus (Μαρίνος):** (fl. 110 CE) a physician and teacher in Alexandria whom Galen credits with the revival of anatomy; p. 40.
- Martialius (Μαρτιάλιος):** a contemporary known only from a few passages in Galen's works; pp. 14-16.
- Menodotus Severus of Nicomedia (Μηνοδότος):** (2<sup>nd</sup> C CE) a leader of the empirical school; p. 61.
- Metrodorus of Lampsacus (Μητροδώρος):** (331-287 BCE), a major proponent of Epicureanism; p. 78.
- Numisianus of Corinth (Νουμισιανός):** a student of Quintus whose lectures Galen attended; p. 100.
- Pelops of Smyrna (Πέλοψ):** (2<sup>nd</sup> C. CE) one of the teachers of Galen; pp. 20-23 100-101.
- Praxagoras (Πραξαγόρας):** (4<sup>th</sup> C BCE) a physician; p. 15.
- Quintus (Κόϊντος):** a Roman doctor who instructed Galen's own teacher Satyrus and many others; pp. 34, 100-101.
- Rufus of Ephesus (Ῥούφος):** (late 1<sup>st</sup> C CE) an anatomist; p. 100.
- Sabinus (Σαβίνος):** a Hippocratic doctor who taught Galen's own teacher, Stratonicus; p. 100.
- Satyrus of Pergamum (Σάτυρος):** a teacher of Galen; p. 101.
- Theodas of Laodicea:** (2<sup>nd</sup> C. CE) doctor of the Empiric sect
- Theophrastus of Eresos (Θεοφράστος):** (371-287 BCE) a student of Aristotle and his successor as head of the Peripatetic School; p. 69.





## Glossary





## Α α

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good  
 ἄγαν: very, much, very much  
 ἀγγεῖον, τό: vessel  
 ἀγμός, ό: a fracture  
 ἀγνοέω: not to know  
 ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring  
 ἀδήν, -ένος, ή: a gland  
 ἄδικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust  
 ἀδύνατος, -ον: unable, impossible  
 αἰεί: always  
 ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ό: air  
 ἀθλητής, ό: an athlete, prizefighter  
 ἀθροίζω: to gather together, to muster  
 αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals  
 αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood  
 αἵρεσις, -εως, ή: a sect, a school of philosophy  
 αἴρω: to take up, lift up  
 αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, understand  
 αἰτία, ή: a cause, reason, charge  
 ἀκολουθέω: to follow  
 ἀκούω: to hear  
 ἄκρα, ή: a tip  
 ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate  
 ἀλάομαι: to wander, stray  
 ἀληθής, -ές: unconcealed, true  
 ἀληθώς: truly  
 ἀλλά: otherwise, but  
 ἀλλήλων: one another  
 ἄλλος, -η, -ον: another, other  
 ἄλλως: in another way  
 ἄλογος, -ον: irrational  
 ἅμα: at the same time, together with (+ *dat.*)  
 ἁμαρτάνω: to miss, miss the mark  
 ἁμαρτημα, -ατος, τό: a failure  
 ἀμείνων, -ον: better  
 ἀμφισβητέω: to stand apart, argue, dispute  
 ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: each or both of two  
 ἄν: (*indefinite particle; generalizes dependent clauses with subjunctive; indicates contrary-to-fact with independent clauses in the indicative; potentiality with the optative*)  
 ἀναγινώσκω: to read  
 ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel  
 ἀναγκαῖον, τό: necessity  
 ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, essential  
 ἀνάγκη, ή: necessity  
 ἀναγορεύω: to proclaim publicly  
 ἀναίσθητος, -ον: imperceptible  
 ἀναλυτικός, -ή, -όν: analytical  
 ἀναπειθω: to bring over, convince  
 ἀναπνέω: to breathe again, take breath  
 ἀναπνοή, ή: breathing  
 ἀνατέμνω: to cut open, dissect  
 ἀνατίθημι: to set up, set in place  
 ἀνατομή, ή: dissection  
 ἀνατομικός, -ή, -όν: anatomical, relating to anatomy  
 ἄνευ: without (+ *gen.*)  
 ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ό: a man  
 ἄνθρωπος, ό: a person  
 ἀντερῶ: to speak against  
 ἀντιάς, -άδος, ή: tonsil  
 ἀντίγραφον, τό: copy, transcript  
 ἄνω: upwards  
 ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy  
 ἄξιος, -ία, -ον: worthy  
 ἀξιόω: to ask  
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: all, the whole  
 ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from, desist  
 ἀπλός, -η, -ον: simple  
 ἀπλῶς: singly, in one way  
 ἀπό: from, away from (+ *gen.*)

## Glossary

**ἀποδεικτικός, -ή, -όν:** affording proof, demonstrative

**ἀπόδειξις, -εως, ἡ:** a demonstration, proof

**ἀποδημία, ἡ:** a trip abroad

**ἀποθνήσκω:** to die

**ἀποκαλέω:** to call back, recall, disparage

**ἀποκρίνομαι:** to answer

**ἀπολείπω:** to leave behind

**ἀπόλλυμι:** to destroy utterly, kill

**ἀποτυγχάνω:** to fail in hitting, to fall short of + gen.

**ἀποφαίνω:** to show, declare

**ἀπόφασις, -εως, ἡ:** a denial

**ἄρα:** particle introducing a question

**ἀρέσκω:** to please

**ἀρετή, ἡ:** goodness, excellence, virtue

**ἄρθρον, τό:** a joint

**ἀριθμός, ό:** number

**ἄριστος, -η, -ον:** best

**ἄρσην, ἄρρενος, ό:** male

**ἀρτηρία, ἡ:** an artery

**ἀρχή, ἡ:** a beginning, origin, rule

**ἄρχω:** to be first, begin, rule

**ἀσκέω:** to practice, train

**ἄσκησις, -εως, ἡ:** exercise, practice, training

**Ἄττικός, -ή, -όν:** Attic, Athenian

**ἄθις:** back, again

**αὐξάνω:** to increase, augment

**αὐτίκα:** straightway, at once

**αὐτοκράτωρ, ό:** emperor

**αὐτός, -ή, -ό:** he, she, it; self, same

**ἀφαιρέω:** to take from, take away from

**ἀφικνέομαι:** to come to, arrive

**ἀφορισμός, ό:** aphorism

**ἄχρηστος, -ον:** useless, unprofitable

**ἄχρι:** up to (+ gen.)

**ἀχώριστος, -ον:** indivisible

## Β β

**βαρβαρίζω:** to be like a barbarian

**βάσκανος, ό:** an envious person

**βελτίων, -ον:** better

**βιβλίδιον, τό:** a small book

**βιβλίον, τό:** a paper, scroll, book

**βίος, ό:** life

**βούλησις, -εως, ἡ:** a willingness

**βούλομαι:** to will, wish

**βραχίον, ό:** arm

**βρόγχος, ό:** trachea, windpipe

## Γ γ

**γάρ:** for

**γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ:** a stomach, belly

**γε:** at least, at any rate (*postpositive*)

**γένος, -ους, τό:** family, kind, category

**γεωμετρία, ἡ:** geometry

**γεωμετρικός, -ή, -όν:** geometrical

**γίγνομαι:** to become, happen, occur

**γιγνώσκω:** to know

**γλώσσα, -ης, ἡ:** a tongue

**γνάθος, ἡ:** a jaw

**γνήσιος, -α, -ον:** genuine, authentic

**γνώμη, ἡ:** knowledge

**γόνυ, τό:** a knee

**γούν:** at any rate, any way

**γράμμα, -ατος, τό:** a letter, writing

**γραμματικός, -ή, -όν:** grammatical

**γραμματικός, ό:** a grammarian

**γράφω:** to write

**γυμνάζω:** to train, practice, exercise

## Δ δ

**δάκτυλος, ό:** a finger

**δέ:** and, but, on the other hand

(preceded by μέν)

**δεῖ:** it is necessary

**δείκνυμι:** to display, exhibit, point out

## Glossary

δέκα: ten  
δέκατος, -η, -ον: tenth  
δέομαι: to ask, lack, need  
δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second, posterior  
δέω: to bind, tie; need  
δή: certainly, now (postpositive)  
δήλος, -ον: obvious  
δηλώω: to show, make clear  
δημοσίᾳ: publicly  
δήπου: doubtless  
διά: through (+ *gen.*); with, by means of  
(+ *acc.*)  
διάγνωσις, -εως, ἥ: a diagnosis  
διαδίδωμι: to distribute  
δίαιτα, ἥ: a regimen, a diet, way of  
living  
διακρίνω: to separate, distinguish  
διαλέγομαι: to converse, discourse with  
διαλεκτικός, -ή, -όν: dialectical, skilled  
in logical argument  
διάλογος, ό: a conversation, dialogue  
διάπλασις, -εως, ἥ: construction,  
formation  
διασώζω: to preserve  
διατρίβω: to spend time  
διαφέρω: to differ  
διαφορά, ἥ: difference, distinction  
διάφραγμα, -ατος, τό: a partition,  
diaphragm  
διαφωνέω: to be dissonant, disagree  
διαφωνία, ἥ: discord, disagreement  
διδασκαλία, ἥ: teaching, instruction,  
education  
διδάσκαλος, ό: a teacher, master  
διδάσκω: to teach  
δίδωμι: to give  
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through  
δίκαϊος, -α, -ον: well-ordered, civilised  
διότι: for the reason that, because, since  
δίς: twice, doubly  
διψάω: to thirst

δόγμα, -ατος, τό: an opinion, dogma  
δογματικός, -ή, -όν: dogmatic  
δοκέω: to seem  
δόξα, ἥ: a notion, opinion, reputation  
δύναμαι: to be able  
δύναμις, -εως, ἥ: power, ability  
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, possible  
δύο: two  
δύσπνοια, ἥ: difficulty of breathing  
δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth

## Ε ε

εάν: = εἰ + ἄν  
ἕβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh  
ἐγκαλέω: to call in, accuse  
ἐγκέφαλος, ό: brain  
ἐγχείρησις, -εως, ἥ: an undertaking,  
procedure  
ἐγώ, μου: I, my  
ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose  
ἔθος, -εος, τό: custom, habit  
εἰ: if  
εἶδον: to see (*ao.*)  
εἶδος, -εος, τό: species  
εἰμί: to be  
εἶπον: to say (*ao.*)  
Εἰρήνη, ἥ: Peace  
εἰς, μία, ἔν: one  
εἰς: into, to (+ *acc.*)  
εἰσάγω: to introduce  
εἰσαγωγή, ἥ: an introduction  
εἰσαῦθις: hereafter, afterwards  
εἰσπνοή, ἥ: inhalation  
εἶτα: next, then  
εἴτε... εἴτε: whether... or  
ἐκ, ἐξ: from, out of, after (+ *gen.*)  
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every  
ἐκάτερος: each of two  
ἐκδίδωμι: to circulate, publish

## Glossary

**ἐκδοσις, -εως, ἡ:** an official edition, publication

**ἐκείνος, -η, -ον:** that, that one

**ἐκκαίδεκα:** sixteen

**ἐκκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον:** sixteenth

**ἐκμανθάνω:** to learn thoroughly

**ἐκπίπτω:** to fall out, happen

**ἐκτείνω:** to stretch out, extend

**ἕκτος, -η, -ον:** sixth

**ἐλέγχω:** to question, refute, prove

**ἔλκος, -εος, τό:** a wound

**ἐλλιπής, -ές:** wanting, lacking, defective

**ἐλπίζω:** to hope for, expect

**ἐμαντοῦ:** of me, of myself

**ἐμός, -ή, -όν:** mine

**ἐμπειρία, ἡ:** experience

**ἐμπειρικός, -ή, -όν:** experienced, empirical

**ἔμπροσθεν:** before

**ἐν:** in, at, among (+ *dat.*)

**ἐναντίος, -α, -ον:** opposite

**ἐναργής, -ές:** visible, palpable

**ἐνατος, -η, -ον:** ninth

**ἐνδείκνυμι:** to mark, point out, demonstrate

**ἐνδείξις, -εως, ἡ:** an indication

**ἐνδεκα:** eleven

**ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον:** eleventh

**ἐνδέχομαι:** to receive, accept

**ἐνδοξος, -ον:** of high repute

**ἐνεκα, ἐνεκεν:** for the sake of (+ *gen.*)

**ἐνέργεια, ἡ:** action, operation, energy

**ἐνιοι, -α,:** some

**ἐννέα:** nine

**ἐννοια, ἡ:** intuition

**ἐντερον, τό:** an intestine

**ἕξι:** six

**ἐξελέγχω:** to test, refute

**ἐξεργάζομαι:** to work out completely

**ἐξέρχομαι:** to go or come out of

**ἐξευρίσκω:** to find out, discover

**ἐξηγέομαι:** to explain

**ἐξήγησις, -εως, ἡ:** an explanation

**ἐξῆς:** one after another, in order

**ἕξις, -εως, ἡ:** a possession, habit

**ἐπαγγελία, ἡ:** a public notice, subject matter

**ἐπαγγέλλω:** to tell, proclaim, announce

**ἐπαγωγή, ἡ:** induction

**ἐπαινέω:** to approve, applaud

**ἐπάνοδος, ἡ:** a return trip

**ἐπασκέω:** to labour, practice

**ἐπεί:** since

**ἐπειδή:** since

**ἔπειτα:** thereupon, then

**ἐπί:** at (+ *gen.*); on, upon (+ *dat.*); on to, against (+ *acc.*)

**ἐπιγαστριος, -ον:** over the belly

**ἐπιγραφή, ἡ:** an inscription, title

**ἐπιγράφω:** to engrave, entitle

**ἐπιδείκνυμι:** to demonstrate

**ἐπίδειξις, -εως, ἡ:** a display, demonstration

**ἐπιδημία, ἡ:** a visit, residing

**ἐπιδήμιος, -ον:** epidemic

**Ἐπικούρειος, -ον:** Epicurean

**ἐπινοέω:** to think of, imagine

**ἐπισημαίνω:** to make a note, signal

**ἐπίσταμαι:** to know

**ἐπιστήμη, ἡ:** understanding, knowledge

**ἐπιστήμων, -ον:** knowing, wise, prudent

**ἐπιτιμάω:** to criticize, rebuke

**ἐπιτομή, ἡ:** a summary, epitome

**ἔπομαι:** to follow

**ἑπτά:** seven

**ἑπτακαιδέκατος, -η, -ον:** seventeenth

**ἔργον, τό:** a deed, work

**ἐρίζω:** to wrangle, quarrel

**ἐρμηνεία, ἡ:** interpretation, explanation

**ἔρχομαι:** to come or go

ἔρω: I will say or speak  
 ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire  
 εταῖρος, ὄ: a comrade, companion, mate  
 ἕτερος, -η, -ον: other  
 ἔτι: still  
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year  
 εὐγνώμων, -ον: reasonable, indulgent  
 εὐδαίμων, -ον: happy  
 εὐδοκμέω: to be held in esteem  
 εὐθέως: immediately  
 εὐλογος, -ον: reasonable, sensible  
 εὑρεσις, -εως, ἦ: a finding, discovery  
 εὕρισκω: to find  
 εὐτυχέω: to be successful, have good fortune  
 εὐτυχία, ἦ: good luck, success, prosperity  
 ἐφεξῆς: in order  
 ἐφίημι: to send to, permit; (*mid.*) to aim at (+ *gen.*)  
 ἔχω: to have; to be able (+ *inf.*)

## Z ζ

ζάω: to live  
 ζητέω: to seek  
 ζήτησις, -εως, ἦ: a seeking, inquiry  
 ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal

## H η

ἢ: or; than  
 ἠγέομαι: to consider, suppose  
 ἦδη: already, now  
 ἠδονῆ, ἦ: pleasure  
 ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral  
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here  
 ἡμέρα, ἦ: day  
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our  
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when  
 ἦπαρ, -ατος, τό: a liver  
 ἦτοι ... ἦ: either ... or

## Θ θ

θάτερον (= τό ἕτερον): the other (of two)  
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be astonished  
 θεάομαι: to look on, see, observe  
 θεραπεία, ἦ: a service, therapy  
 θεραπευτικός, -ή, -όν: therapeutic  
 θεραπεύω: to do service, heal  
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm  
 θέσις, -εως, ἦ: a placing, position  
 θεώρημα, -ατος, τό: a speculation, theory  
 θεωρητός, -ή, -όν: that may be seen  
 θεωρία, ἦ: a science, theory, investigation  
 θώραξ, -ακος, ὄ: a chest

## I ι

ἱαμα, -ατος, τό: remedy, medicine  
 ἱατρική, ἦ: medical art  
 ἱατρικός, -ή, -όν: of medicine, medical  
 ἱατρός, ὄ: a doctor, physician or surgeon  
 ἴδιος, -α, -ον: one's own, pertaining to oneself, specific  
 ἰητρεῖον, τό: surgery  
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: sufficient, ready to (+ *inf.*)  
 ἱκανῶς: sufficiently  
 ἵνα: in order to + *subjunctive* or *optative*  
 ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as

## K κ

καθάπερ: as, just as  
 καθίστημι: to set down, establish  
 καί: and, also, even  
 καιρός, ὄ: critical moment  
 καίτοι: and indeed

## Glossary

**καίω**: to light, kindle, burn  
**κακός, -ή, -όν**: bad  
**καλέω**: to call, summon  
**καλός, -ή, -όν**: good  
**κάμνω**: to be sick  
**κάν**: (=καὶ ἄν)  
**καρδία, ἡ**: a heart  
**κατά, καθ'**: down, along, according to  
 (+ *acc.*)  
**καταλείπω**: to leave behind  
**κατασκευή, ἡ**: predisposition,  
 preparation  
**κατάφασις, -εως, ἡ**: affirmation  
**καταφρονέω**: to think down upon,  
 despise  
**κατηγορία, ἡ**: a category  
**κατορθόω**: to set upright, succeed  
**κάτω**: down, downwards, lower  
**κελεύω**: to command, order  
**κεράννυμι**: to mix, mingle  
**κεφάλαιος, -α, -ον**: main, principal  
**κεφαλή, ἡ**: a head  
**κίβδηλος, -ον**: spurious, base  
**κινέω**: to set in motion, move  
**κίνησις, -εως, ἡ**: movement, motion  
**κλείς, -ιδος, ἡ**: a collar bone, clavicle  
**κοινός, -ή, -όν**: common  
**κοινωνέω**: to share in, to receive  
**κοινωνία, ἡ**: an association, relationship  
**κομίζω**: to bring, take care of, provide  
 for  
**κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ**: a mixture  
**κράτιστος, -η, -ον**: strongest, most  
 excellent, best  
**κρείττων, -ον**: better than (+ *gen.*)  
**κρίνω**: to pick out, judge  
**κρίσιμος, -η, -ον**: decisive, critical  
**κρίσις, -εως, ἡ**: a critique, power of  
 distinguishing, a turning point (in a  
 disease)  
**κτάομαι**: to get, gain, acquire

**κύστις, -εως, ἡ**: a bladder  
**κῶλον, τό**: a limb  
**κωμικός, -ή, -όν**: comic

## Λ λ

**λαμβάνω**: to take  
**λανθάνω**: to escape notice  
**λέγω**: to speak, say, tell  
**λείπω**: to leave, leave behind, remain  
**λέξις, -εως, ἡ**: a speaking, speech, style  
**λίμνη, ἡ**: a pool of standing water  
**λογικός, -ή, -όν**: logical, rational  
**λογισμός, ό**: a counting, reasoning  
**λόγος, ό**: a word, reason, account  
**λοιμός, ό**: a plague, pestilence  
**λοιπός, -ή, -όν**: remaining, the rest  
**λύσις, -ιος, ἡ**: a loosing, solution  
**λύω**: to loose  
**λωβάομαι**: to outrage, maltreat

## Μ μ

**μάθησις, -εως, ἡ**: learning  
**μαθητής, -ου, ό**: a learner, pupil  
**μανθάνω**: to learn  
**μεγάλως, (adv.)** “greatly”  
**μέγας, μέγαλα, μέγα**: great, large  
**μέγεθος, -εος, τό**: magnitude, size  
**μεθοδικός, -ή, -όν**: methodical,  
 systematic, belonging to the  
 methodic school  
**μέθοδος, ἡ**: a following after, pursuit,  
 method  
**μειράκιον, τό**: a boy, lad  
**μέλλω**: to intend to, to be about to (+  
*inf.*)  
**μέμφομαι**: to blame, censure + *dat.*  
**μέν**: on the one hand (*followed by δέ*)  
**μέντοι**: indeed, to be sure, however  
**μένω**: to remain, stay  
**μέρος, -εος, τό**: a part, share

**μέσος, -η, -ον:** middle, in the middle  
**μετά:** with (+ *gen.*); after (+ *acc.*)  
**μεταβαίνω:** to pass from one place to another  
**μεταξύ:** between  
**μεταχειρίζω:** to handle, manage, practice, study  
**μετέρχομαι:** to go after, seek, pursue  
**μέχρι:** up to (+ *gen.*)  
**μή:** not; lest; don't (+ *ao. subj. or imper.*)  
**μηδέ:** but not or and not, nor  
**μήτε ... μήτε:** neither ... nor  
**μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν:** no one, nothing  
**μήν:** indeed, truly  
**μήτρα, ἡ:** womb  
**μικρός, -ά, -όν:** small, little  
**μικτός, -ή, -όν:** mixed, blended, compound  
**μνημονεύω:** to call to mind, remember, note  
**μόνος, -η, -ον:** alone, only  
**μόριον, τό:** a piece, part, portion  
**μοχθηρός, -ά, -όν:** miserable, wretched, hateful  
**μυκτήρ, -ῆρος, ὄ:** a nose, nostril  
**μῦς, μῦς, ὄ:** a muscle

## N ν

**νεάνισκος, ὄ:** youth, young man  
**νέος, -α, -ον:** young  
**νεῦρον, τό:** a sinew, nerve, tendon  
**νεφρός, ὄ:** a kidney  
**νοσέω:** to be sick  
**νόσημα, -ατος, τό:** a sickness, disease, plague  
**νῦν, νυνί:** now, at this moment  
**νωτιαῖος, -α, -ον:** of the back or spine

## O ο

**ὁ, ἡ, τό:** the (*definite article*); who, which (*relative pronoun*)  
**ὄγδοος, -η, -ον:** eighth  
**ὁδός, ἡ:** a way, method  
**ὀδούς, -όντος, ὄ:** tooth  
**οἶδα:** to know (*pf.*)  
**οἴκαδε:** homeward  
**οἰκέτης, -ου, ὄ:** a house-slave, menial  
**οἶομαι:** to suppose, think, deem, imagine  
**οἶος, -α, -ον:** such as, what sort (*οἶον τε ἔστι:* it is possible + *inf.*)  
**ὀκνηρός, -ά, -όν:** shrinking, anxious  
**ὀκτώ:** eight  
**ὀλίγος, -η, -ον:** few, little, small  
**ὅλος, -η, -ον:** whole, entire  
**ὅλως:** completely  
**ὅμοιος, -α, -ον:** like, same  
**ὄνομα, -ατος, τό:** a name  
**ὀνομάζω:** to name, call  
**ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ:** sharp, acute, keen  
**ὀπότε:** when, whenever  
**ὅπως:** as, in such manner as, how  
**ὀράω:** to see  
**ὄργανον, τό:** an organ  
**ὀρθός, -ή, -όν:** straight, correct, reliable  
**ὀρθότης, -ητος, ἡ:** correctness, properness, right use  
**ὅσος, -η, -ον:** how many, whatever, whoever  
**ὀστέον, τό:** a bone  
**ὅστις, ὅτι:** anyone who, anything which  
**ὅτε:** when  
**ὅτι:** that, because  
**οὐ, οὐκ:** not  
**οὐδέ:** but not  
**οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν:** no one  
**οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον:** neither of the two  
**οὖν:** so, therefore



## Glossary

**οὐραχός, ὄ:** urachus (a canal from the bladder to the umbilical cord)

**οὐρητήρ, -ήρος, ὄ:** (*pl.*) the ducts that convey the urine to the bladder

**οὐρητικός, -ή, -όν:** urinary, pertaining to urine

**οὐσία, ἡ:** substance, property

**οὔτε:** and not

**οὗτος, αὐτή, τοῦτο:** this

**ὀφθαλμός, ὄ:** an eye

## Π π

**πάθος, -εως, τό:** an affection, condition, disease

**παιδεία, ἡ:** education

**παιδεύω:** to bring up, educate

**παιδίον, τό:** small child

**παῖς, παιδός, ὄ:** a child

**παλαιός, -ά, -όν:** old, ancient

**πάλιν:** again, in turn, on the other hand

**παλμός, ὄ:** quivering motion

**πάμπολυς, -πόλλη, -πολυ:** very much

**πάντως:** altogether

**πάνυ:** altogether, entirely, very

**παρά:** from (+ *gen.*); beside (+ *dat.*); to (+ *acc.*)

**παραγίγνομαι:** to be near, accompany

**παράδειγμα, -ατος, τό:** an example

**παρακαλέω:** to call to, exhort, request

**παράκειμαι:** to lie beside or before

**παραλείπω:** to leave behind, omit

**πάρεμι:** to be present

**παρίσθμιον, τό:** tonsil

**πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν:** all, every, whole

**πάσχω:** to experience, suffer

**πατήρ, ὄ:** a father

**πάτριος, -α, -ον:** of or belonging to one's father

**πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ:** fatherland

**παύω:** to make to cease

**πείθω:** to prevail upon, win over, persuade

**πειράω:** to attempt, endeavor, try

**πέμπτος, -η, -ον:** fifth

**πέμπω:** to send, dispatch

**πέντε:** five

**πεντεκαίδεκα:** fifteen

**πεντεκαίδεκατος, -η, -ον:** fifteenth

**περί:** concerning, about (+ *gen.*); about, around (+ *acc.*)

**περιέχω:** to encompass, embrace, surround, contain

**περιπατητικός, -ή, -όν:** Peripatetic, Aristotelian

**πῆχυς, ὄ:** a forearm

**πιστεύω:** to trust, believe in

**πλείστος, -η, -ον:** most, largest

**πλείων, πλέον:** more

**πλήθος, -εος, τό:** a crowd, multitude, mass

**πληρόω:** to make full, complete

**πλοκή, ἡ:** a formation, structure

**πλοῦτος, ὄ:** wealth

**πνεύμων, -ονος, ὄ:** a lung

**πόθεν:** whence?

**ποιέω:** to make, do

**πόλις, -εως, ἡ:** a city

**πολιτικός, -ή, -όν:** political

**πολύς, πολλή, πολύ:** many, much

**πορεύω:** to make one's way, go

**πόρος, ὄ:** a duct, pore

**πόσος, -η, -ον:** how many? how much?

**ποταμός, ὄ:** a river, stream

**ποτε:** ever, at any time

**πότερος, -α, -ον:** whether of the two?

**ποῦ:** where?

**πρᾶγμα, τό:** a deed, matter

**πραγματεία, ἡ:** a major work, treatment, written study

**πράξις, -εως, ἡ:** a doing, transaction, action

**πράττω:** to do, act  
**πρίν:** before (+ *inf.*)  
**πρό:** before  
**προβάλλω:** to challenge, demand  
**πρόβλημα, -ατος, τό:** a problem, set question  
**προγνωστικός, -ή, -όν:** prognostic  
**προγυμνάζω:** to exercise or train beforehand  
**πρόδηλος, -ον:** clear beforehand  
**προέρχομαι:** to approach, to go up to, advance  
**προηγέομαι:** to be the leader, precede  
**προλέγω:** pick out, choose, prefer; to say beforehand  
**προοίμιον, τό:** an introduction  
**πρός:** to, near (+ *dat.*), from (+ *gen.*), towards (+ *acc.*)  
**προσεξευρίσκω:** to discover in addition, find out besides  
**προσέτι:** in addition  
**προσέχω:** to hold to  
**προσήκω:** to be fitting, be proper, related to  
**πρόσκειμαι:** to be placed by, be oriented toward  
**προσποιέω:** to make over to, attribute; to pretend to (+ *inf.*)  
**προστίθηναι:** to add to  
**προσφωνέω:** to address  
**πρόσωπον, τό:** a face  
**πρότασις, -εως, ή:** a proposition, premiss  
**πρότερον:** before, previously  
**προτρέπω:** to urge forwards  
**πρώτος, -η, -ον:** first  
**πυνηθάνομαι:** to learn (by inquiry)  
**πυρετός, ό:** a burning fever  
**πυρκαϊα, ή:** a conflagration  
**πώς:** how? in what way?  
**πως:** in any way, at all, somewhat

## Ρ ρ

**ράδιος, -α, -ον:** easy  
**ράφή, ή:** a seam, suture  
**ράχις, -ιος, ό:** the lower part of the back, spine  
**ρήτωρ, -ορος, ό:** a public speaker

## Σ σ

**σάρξ, σαρκός, ή:** flesh  
**σημαίνω:** to indicate, make known, point out, signify  
**σημείον, τό:** a sign, a mark, token  
**σκέλος, -εος, τό:** a leg  
**σκοπός, ό:** a goal, purpose, aim  
**σμικρός, -ά, -όν:** small, little  
**σολοικίζω:** to commit a solecism  
**σπλήν, ό:** a spleen  
**σπουδάζω:** to be eager for, endeavor, be serious  
**στοιχείον, τό:** an element  
**στόμαχος, ό:** an opening, stomach  
**σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό:** a writing  
**συγγραφεύς, -έως, ό:** a writer  
**συγγράφω:** to write, compose  
**σύγκειμαι:** to be composed  
**συλλογισμός, ό:** syllogism  
**συλλογιστικός, -ή, -όν:** syllogistic  
**συμβαίνω:** to come together, happen, occur  
**σύμπας, σύμπασα, σύμπαν:** all together  
**σύμπτωμα, -ατος, τό:** a chance, casualty, symptom  
**σύν:** with (+ *dat.*)  
**σύνδεσμος, ό:** a bond, ligament  
**συνεχής, -ές:** holding together, connecting  
**συνήθης, -ες:** customary  
**σύνθεσις, -εως, ή:** a composition  
**συνίστημι:** to set together, establish, compose

## Glossary

**συνουσία, ἡ:** social intercourse, relationship, attendance  
**σύνοψις, -εως, ἡ:** a general view, synopsis  
**σύντομος, -ον:** short  
**συστολή, ἡ:** a contraction  
**σφυγμός, ὁ:** a pulse  
**σχεδόν:** close, nearly  
**σῶμα, -ατος, τό:** a body  
**σωφροσύνη, ἡ:** moderation, discretion  
**σώφρων, -ονος:** of sound mind, sane

### Τ τ

**τάξις, -εως, ἡ:** an arranging, order  
**τάττω:** to arrange, put in order  
**τάχος, τό:** swiftness, speed  
**τε:** and (*postpositive*)  
**τέλειος, -α, -ον:** finished, complete  
**τελέως:** completely  
**τέλος, -εος, τό:** fulfilment, completion, purpose, end  
**τέμενος, -εος, τό:** a sacred space, temple  
**τεσσαράκοντα:** forty  
**τεσσαρεσκαίδεκα, οἱ:** fourteen  
**τεσσαρεσκαιδέκατος, -η, -ον:** fourteenth  
**τέταρτος, -η, -ον:** fourth  
**τέτταρες, -α:** four  
**τέχνη, ἡ:** art, skill, craft  
**τίθημι:** to set, put, place  
**τιμή, ἡ:** honor  
**τίμιος, -ον:** valued  
**τις, τι:** someone, something (*indefinite*)  
**τίς, τί:** who? which? (*interrogative*)  
**τοίνυν:** therefore, accordingly  
**τοιούτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο:** such as this  
**τόπος, ὁ:** a place  
**τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο:** of such a kind, so large, so great  
**τότε:** at that time, then  
**τραῦμα, -ατος, τό:** a wound, hurt

**τράχηλος, ὁ:** a neck, throat  
**τρεις, τρία:** three  
**τρέφω:** to care for, nourish, raise  
**τρήμα, -ατος, τό:** a hole, orifice, perforation  
 **τρίτος, -η, -ον:** third  
**τρόμος, ὁ:** a trembling, quivering  
**τρόπος, ὁ:** a course, way, manner  
**τροφή, ἡ:** nourishment, food  
**τυγχάνω:** to hit upon, happen

### Υ υ

**ύγρός, -ά, -όν:** wet, moist, running, fluid  
**ύδωρ, ύδατος, τό:** water  
**ύλη, ἡ:** matter, subject matter  
**ύμενώδης, -ες:** membranous  
**ύμήν, -ένος, ὁ:** thin skin, membrane  
**ύπαγορεύω:** to dictate  
**ύπαλλάττω:** to alter, change  
**ύπάρχω:** to begin, become  
**ύπέρ:** over, above (+ *gen.*); over, beyond (+ *acc.*)  
**ύπό, ύφ:** from under, by (+ *gen.*); under (+ *dat.*); toward (+ *acc.*)  
**ύπογράφω:** to entitle, write below  
**ύπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ:** hypothesis, supposition  
**ύπολαμβάνω:** to take up, understand  
**ύπόμνημα, -ατος, τό:** a commentary, note, treatise  
**ύποτύπωσις, -εως, ἡ:** an outline, pattern  
**ύστερον:** later, after  
**ύστερος, -α, -ον:** latter, last

### Φ φ

**φαίνομαι:** to appear, be visible, bring to light  
**φανέρως, -ά, -όν:** manifest, evident  
**φάρμακον, τό:** a drug, medicine

**φάσκω:** to say, affirm, assert  
**φέρω:** to bear, carry, bring  
**φημί:** to declare, say  
**φθάνω:** to come or do first or before  
**φιλόπρονος, -ον:** industrious, diligent  
**φίλος, ὁ:** a friend  
**φιλοσοφία, ἡ:** philosophy  
**φιλόσοφος, ὁ:** a lover of wisdom, philosopher  
**φιλότιμος, -ον:** ambitious, competitive, combative  
**φλεβοτομία, ἡ:** blood-letting  
**φλέψ, ἡ:** a vein  
**φροντίζω:** to think, consider  
**φυλάττω:** to guard, preserve  
**φυσικός, -ή, -όν:** natural, native, physical  
**φύσις, -εως, ἡ:** nature, natural quality, natural condition  
**φύω:** to bring forth, produce, put forth  
**φωνή, ἡ:** a sound, expression, speech, voice  
**φωράω:** to detect, search after

Ξ χ

**χάρις, ἡ:** grace, favor  
**χείλος, -εος, τό:** a lip  
**χειμάζω:** to pass the winter  
**χειμών, -ώνος, ὁ:** winter  
**χείρ, χειρός, ἡ:** a hand  
**χράσμαι:** to make use of (+ *dat.*)  
**χρεία, ἡ:** use, advantage, service  
**χρή:** it is necessary  
**χρήμα, -ατος, τό:** a thing that one uses, wealth  
**χρήσιμος, -η, -ον:** useful, serviceable  
**χρόνος, ὁ:** time  
**χυμός, ὁ:** juice  
**χωρίς:** separately, apart from (+ *gen.*)

Ψ ψ

**ψευδής, -ές:** lying, false  
**ψεύδω:** to cheat, falsify  
**ψυχή, ἡ:** soul  
**ψυχικός, -ή, -όν:** spiritual

Ω ω

**ὠδία, -ῖνος, ἡ:** pain  
**ὠμοπλάτη, ἡ:** a shoulder blade  
**ὦρα, ἡ:** a season  
**ὡς + part.,** expressing alleged grounds of action  
**ὡς:** *adv.* as, so, how; *conj.* that, in order that, since; *prep.* to (+ *acc.*); as if, as (+ *part.*); as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible (+ *superlative*)  
**ὡσάντως:** in like manner, just so  
**ὡσπερ:** just as if, even as  
**ὥστε:** with the result that, and so

## NOTES

## NOTES

## NOTES

## NOTES



## NOTES

## NOTES

## NOTES

## GALEN: THREE TREATISES

### COMMON VOCABULARY

#### NOUNS

*αἵρεσις*, -εως, ἡ: a sect, a school of philosophy

*αἰτία*, ἡ: a cause, reason

*ἀνατομή*, ἡ: dissection, anatomy

*ἀπόδειξις*, -εως, ἡ: a demonstration, proof

*βιβλίον*, τό: a paper, scroll, book

*δόγμα*, -ατος, τό: an opinion, dogma

*δύναμις*, -εως, ἡ: power, faculty

*ἐπιγραφή*, ἡ: an inscription, title

*θεώρημα*, -ατος, τό: a speculation, theory

*θεωρία*, ἡ: a science, theory, investigation

*ιατρική*, ἡ: medicine, medical art

*ιατρός*, ό: a doctor, physician or surgeon

*μέθοδος*, ἡ: a following after, pursuit, method

*μέρος*, -εος, τό: a part, share

*μόριον*, τό: a piece, part, portion

*μῦς*, μῦός, ό: a muscle

*νόσημα*, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease, plague

*ὀστέον*, τό: a bone

*πραγματεία*, ἡ: a major work, treatment, written study

*τέχνη*, ἡ: art, skill, craft

*ὑπόμνημα*, -ατος, τό: a commentary, note, treatise

#### ADJECTIVES

*ἀνατομικός*, -ή, -όν: anatomical, relating to anatomy

*θεραπευτικός*, -ή, -όν: therapeutic

*ιατρικός*, -ή, -όν: of medicine, medical

*λογικός*, -ή, -όν: logical, rational

#### VERBS

*ἀναγιγνώσκω*: to read

*γράφω*: to write

## GALEN: THREE TREATISES

### COMMON NUMBERS

- |                       |                           |                    |                              |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. εἷς, μία, ἕν: one  | πρότερος, -α, -ον: prior  | 6. ἕξι: six        | ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth        |
| 2. δύο, δυοῖν: two    | πρώτος, -η, -ον: first    | 7. ἑπτα: seven     | ἑβδόμος, -η, -ον: seventh    |
| 3. τρεῖς, τρία: three | δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second | 8. ὀκτώ: eight     | ὄγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth      |
| 4. τέτταρες, -α: four | τρίτος, -η, -ον: third    | 9. ἐννέα: nine     | ἐνάτος, -η, -ον: ninth       |
| 5. πέντε: five        | τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth | 10. δέκα: ten      | δέκατος, -η, -ον: tenth      |
|                       | πέμπτos, -η, -ον: fifth   | 11. ἑνδέκα: eleven | ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον: eleventh |

